

# NEW ORLEANS PELICANS CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS

METAIRIE, LOUISIANA



## CD Specifications

WDG Project No. AR2315  
April 15, 2024

Architect **Woodward Design Group**  
WDG Project No. **AR2315**  
Date **April 15, 2024**

**SECTION 00 0101  
PROJECT TITLE PAGE**

**SPECIFICATIONS  
FOR:  
NEW ORLEANS PELICANS  
CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS  
5800 AIRLINE DRIVE  
METAIRIE, LOUISIANA  
PROJECT NUMBER: - AR 2315**

**OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE:**

NEW ORLEANS LOUISIANA PELICANS c/o  
CORPORATE REALTY, INC.  
201 ST. CHARLES AVE. SUITE 4411  
NEW ORLEANS, LOUISIANA 70170

**ARCHITECTS:**

WOODWARD DESIGN GROUP  
1000 S. NORMAN C. FRANCIS PARKWAY  
NEW ORLEANS, LOUISIANA 70125  
ERIK WISMAR, AIA, LEED AP

**STRUCTURAL:**

WOODWARD ENGINEERING GROUP  
1000 S. NORMAN C. FRANCIS PARKWAY  
NEW ORLEANS, LOUISIANA 70125

**DESIGN-BUILD MECHANICAL:**

PONTCHARTRAIN MECHANICAL  
716 LITTLE FARMS AVE.  
METAIRIE, LOUISIANA 70003

**ELECTRICAL:**

A1 ELECTRICAL  
2520 METAIRIE LAWN DRIVE  
METAIRIE, LOUISIANA 70002

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 00 0110 TABLE OF CONTENTS

### PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

#### DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 0101 - Project Title Page

00 0110 - Table of Contents

00 6200 - Project Forms

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 1000 - Summary

01 2500 - Substitution Procedures

01 2600 - Contract Modification Procedures

01 2900 - Payment Procedures

01 3100 - Project Management and Coordination

01 3300 - Submittal Procedures

01 4000 - Quality Requirements

01 4200 - References

01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls

01 5723 – Temporary Stormwater Pollution Control

01 6000 - Product Requirements

01 7300 - Execution

01 7700 - Closeout Procedures

01 7839 - Project Record Documents

## **DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS**

02 4119 - Selective Demolition

## **DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

03 0000 - SEE STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS FOR CONCRETE WORK

## **DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

04 2000 - Unit Masonry

## **DIVISION 05 - METALS**

05 0000 - SEE STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS FOR STEEL FRAMING, JOISTS, DECK, ETC.

05 5000 - Metal Fabrications

05 7313 - Glazed Decorative Metal Railings

## **DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES**

06 1000 - Rough Carpentry

06 2023 - Interior Finish Carpentry

06 4116 - Plastic Laminate Clad Architectural Casework

## **DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07 7200 - Roof Hatches

07 7220 - Safety Posts for Ladders Used with Roof Hatches

72 7233 - Safety Railings

07 8413 - Penetration Firestopping

07 9200 - Joint Sealants

## **DIVISION 8 - OPENINGS**

- 08 1213 - Hollow Metal Frames
- 08 1216 - Aluminum Frames
- 08 1416 - Flush Wood Doors
- 08 3113 - Access Doors and Frames
- 08 3513.13 - Multipaneled Folding Aluminum-Framed Glass Doors
- 08 3600 - Sectional Overhead Doors
- 08 4113 - Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts
- 08 7100 - Door Hardware
- 08 8000 - Glazing
- 08 8700 - Writeable Glass Film

## **DIVISION 9 - FINISHES**

- 09 2216 - Non-Structural Metal Framing
- 09 2900 - Gypsum Board
- 09 3000 - Tiling
- 09 5123 - Acoustical Tile Ceilings
- 09 5426 - Linear Wood Wall and Ceiling Plank System
- 09 6513 - Resilient Base and Accessories
- 09 6517 - Vinyl Tile Flooring (LVT)
- 09 6566 - Resilient Athletic Flooring
- 09 6813 - Tile Carpeting
- 09 7753 - Vegetated Wall Systems
- 09 9100 - Painting and Staining

## **DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

- 10 1423.16 - Room-Identification Panel Signage

10 2113.17 - Phenolic Core Toilet Compartments

10 2800 - Toilet, Bath and Laundry Accessories

10 4413 - Fire Protection Cabinets

10 4416 - Fire Extinguishers

## **DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

11 4000 -Food Service Equipment - SEE FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT DRAWINGS

## **DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

12 3661.16 - Solid Surfacing Countertops

12 3661.19 - Quartz Agglomerate Countertops

## **DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

13 3123 - Tensioned Fabric Structures

## **DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION**

21 0000 - SEE SPRINKLER SHOP DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING**

22 0000 - SEE PLUMBING DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING**

23 0000 – SEE HVAC DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL**

26 0010 - SEE ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**



32 1300 - Unit Paving

32 1813 - Synthetic Grass Surfacing

32 3119 - Decorative Metal Fences and Gates

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 00 0110 TABLE OF CONTENTS

### PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

#### DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 0101 - Project Title Page

00 0110 - Table of Contents

00 6200 - Project Forms

### SPECIFICATIONS

#### DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 1000 - Summary

01 2500 - Substitution Procedures

01 2600 - Contract Modification Procedures

01 2900 - Payment Procedures

01 3100 - Project Management and Coordination

01 3300 - Submittal Procedures

01 4000 - Quality Requirements

01 4200 - References

01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls

01 5723 - Temporary Storm Water Pollution Control

01 6000 - Product Requirements

01 7300 - Execution

01 7700 - Closeout Procedures

01 7839 - Project Record Documents

## **DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS**

02 4119 - Selective Demolition

## **DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

03 0000 - SEE STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS FOR CONCRETE WORK

## **DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

04 2000 - Unit Masonry

## **DIVISION 05 - METALS**

05 0000 - SEE STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS FOR STEEL FRAMING, JOISTS, DECK, ETC.

05 5000 - Metal Fabrications

05 7313 - Glazed Decorative Metal Railings

## **DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES**

06 1000 - Rough Carpentry

06 2023 - Interior Finish Carpentry

06 4116 - Plastic Laminate Clad Architectural Casework

## **DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

07 8413 - Penetration Firestopping

07 9200 - Joint Sealants

## **DIVISION 8 - OPENINGS**

08 1213 - Hollow Metal Frames

08 1216 - Aluminum Frames

08 1416 - Flush Wood Doors

08 3113 - Access Doors and Frames

08 3513.13 - Multipaneled Folding Aluminum-Framed Glass Doors

08 3600 - Sectional Overhead Doors

08 4113 - Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts

08 7100 - Door Hardware

08 8000 - Glazing

08 8700 - Writeable Glass Film

## **DIVISION 9 - FINISHES**

09 2216 - Non-Structural Metal Framing

09 2900 - Gypsum Board

09 3000 - Tiling

09 5123 - Acoustical Tile Ceilings

09 5426 - Linear Wood Wall and Ceiling Plank System

09 6513 - Resilient Base and Accessories

09 6517 - Vinyl Tile Flooring (LVT)

09 6813 - Tile Carpeting

09 9100 - Painting and Staining

## **DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

10 1423.16 - Room-Identification Panel Signage

10 2113.17 - Phenolic Core Toilet Compartments

10 2800 - Toilet, Bath and Laundry Accessories

10 4413 - Fire Protection Cabinets

10 4416 - Fire Extinguishers

## **DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

11 4000 -Food Service Equipment - SEE FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT DRAWINGS

## **DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

12 3661.16 - Solid Surfacing Countertops

12 3661.19 - Quartz Agglomerate Countertops

## **DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

13 3123 - Tensioned Fabric Structures

## **DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION**

21 0000 - SEE SPRINKLER SHOP DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING**

22 0000 - SEE PLUMBING DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING**

23 0000 – SEE HVAC DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL**

26 0010 - SEE ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS, NOTES AND DETAILS

## **DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

32 1300 - Unit Paving

32 1813 - Synthetic Grass Surfacing

32 3119 – Decorative Metal Fences and Gates

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 00 60 PROJECT FORMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 FORM OF AGREEMENT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The following form of Owner/Contractor Agreement and form of the General Conditions shall be used for Project:
1. Document DBIA 530: Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Design-Builder, Cost Plus Fee with an Option for a guaranteed Maximum Price.
  2. Document No. 535: Standard Form of General Conditions of Contract Between Owner & Design-Builder

#### 1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE FORMS

- A. Copies of AIA standard forms may be obtained from the American Institute of Architects; [www.aiacontractdocsaiaincontracts.org](http://www.aiacontractdocsaiaincontracts.org); (800) 942-7732.
- B. Information and Modification Forms:
1. Form for Requests for Information (RFIs): AIA Document G716-2004 "Request for Information (RFI)."
  2. Form of Request for Proposal: AIA Document G709-2018 "Proposal Request."
  3. Change Order Form: AIA Document G701-2017 "Change Order."
  4. Form of Architect's Memorandum for Minor Changes in the Work: AIA Document G710-2017 "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."
  5. Form of Change Directive: AIA Document G714-2017 "Construction Change Directive."
- C. Payment Forms:
1. Schedule of Values Form: AIA Document G703-1992 "Continuation Sheet."
  2. Payment Application: AIA Document G702-1992/703-1992 "Application and Certificate for Payment and Continuation Sheet."
  3. Form of Contractor's Affidavit: AIA Document G706-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  4. Form of Affidavit of Release of Liens: AIA Document G706A-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Release of Liens."
  5. Form of Consent of Surety: AIA Document G707-1994 "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 00 60 PROJECT FORMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 FORM OF AGREEMENT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The following form of Owner/Contractor Agreement and form of the General Conditions shall be used for Project:
1. Document DBIA 530: Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Design-Builder, Cost Plus Fee with an Option for a guaranteed Maximum Price.
  2. Document No. 535: Standard Form of General Conditions of Contract Between Owner & Design-Builder

#### 1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE FORMS

- A. Copies of AIA standard forms may be obtained from the American Institute of Architects; [www.aiacontractdocsaiaincontracts.org](http://www.aiacontractdocsaiaincontracts.org); (800) 942-7732.
- B. Information and Modification Forms:
1. Form for Requests for Information (RFIs): AIA Document G716-2004 "Request for Information (RFI)."
  2. Form of Request for Proposal: AIA Document G709-2018 "Proposal Request."
  3. Change Order Form: AIA Document G701-2017 "Change Order."
  4. Form of Architect's Memorandum for Minor Changes in the Work: AIA Document G710-2017 "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."
  5. Form of Change Directive: AIA Document G714-2017 "Construction Change Directive."
- C. Payment Forms:
1. Schedule of Values Form: AIA Document G703-1992 "Continuation Sheet."
  2. Payment Application: AIA Document G702-1992/703-1992 "Application and Certificate for Payment and Continuation Sheet."
  3. Form of Contractor's Affidavit: AIA Document G706-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  4. Form of Affidavit of Release of Liens: AIA Document G706A-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Release of Liens."
  5. Form of Consent of Surety: AIA Document G707-1994 "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 01 1000 SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Project information.
  - 2. Project Description.
  - 3. Existing Conditions.
  - 4. Work Summary.
  - 5. Demolition.
  - 6. Contractor's use of site and premises.
  - 7. Coordination with adjacent occupants.
  - 8. Work restrictions.
  - 9. Specification and Drawing conventions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
  - 2. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for coordination of Owner-installed products.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package: A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.
- B. Contract Documents for: New Orleans Pelicans – Campus Improvements. WDG Project No. AR 2315

#### 1.4 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification:

NEW ORLEANS PELICANS CAMPUS IMPROVEMENTS  
5800 AIRLINE DRIVE  
METAIRIE, LA 70003

B. Owner:

New Orleans Pelicans  
5800 Airline Drive  
Metairie, LA 70003

C. Architect: Woodward Design Group

Architect: Erik Wismar, AIA, LEED AP  
Woodward Design Group  
1000 S. Norman C, Francis Parkway  
New Orleans, Louisiana 70125

D. Structural Engineering: Woodward Engineering Group.

Nicholas Mannix, P.E.  
Woodward Engineering Group  
1000 S. Norman C. Francis Parkway  
New Orleans, Louisiana 70125

E. Mechanical Engineers:

Pontchartrain Mechanical  
716 Little Farms Avenue  
Metairie, LA 70003

F. Electrical Engineering:

A1 Electric  
2520 Metairie Lawn Drive  
Metairie, Louisiana 70002

G. Contractor:

Woodward Design + Build.  
1000 S. Norman C, Francis Parkway  
New Orleans, Louisiana 70125

## 1.5 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

- A. The Project consists of renovations of a 12,892-sf area and mezzanine within the 45,300-sf basketball practice facility.
- B. Improvements Include:
1. Lobby / Entry
  2. Conference Room
  3. Business Office
  4. Media Room
  5. Storage
  6. Mezzanine with stairs

7. Viewing Deck
8. Wellness/Recovery Area
9. Player Dining Room
10. Kitchen
11. Outdoor Dining
12. Coaches Locker Room
13. Players Toilets

## 1.6 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. The site and surrounding building are occupied and will continue to be occupied during construction.
- B. Laydown areas and material storage should be confirmed.

## 1.7 DEMOLITION

- A. Selective Demolition: Refer to Drawings for items to be salvaged by Owner prior to demolition.
- B. Demolition activities shall not disrupt building tenants.

## 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Generally, work should be sensitive to the existing adjacent tenants. Any major construction activities shall be coordinated with the Building Owner prior to commencement of that activity.
- B. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to work areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
- C. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
  1. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
  2. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- D. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.
- E. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

## 1.9 COORDINATION WITH ADJACENT OCCUPIED PORTIONS OF THE BUILDING

- A. Adjacent areas of the facility will be occupied during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
  - 1. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
  - 2. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

## 1.10 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Cooperate fully with Owner, so work may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying Work under this Contract or work by Owner. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed by Owner.
- B. Any major construction activities shall be coordinated with owner.
- C. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging for temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
- E. Noise, Vibration, Dust, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, dust, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  - 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
- F. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Owner's property is not permitted.

- G. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.
- H. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.

## 1.11 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.
  - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 01 2500 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 3100 - Project Management and Coordination.
  - 2. Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.

- b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
  - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
  - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC IBC-2021
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within 7 days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

## 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

- 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.

- 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
- b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.

- d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 01 2600 CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.
  - 2. Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for forms for contract modifications provided as part of web-based Project management software.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710

#### 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.

- c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
  4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
  5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  6. Comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
  7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

## 1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

## 1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.

1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

## 1.7 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Work Change Directive: Architect may issue a Work Change Directive. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 01 2900 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than 7 days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Owner's name.
    - c. Owner's Project number.
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Architect's Project number.

- f. Contractor's name and address.
  - g. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
  4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
    - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  5. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

## 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Review of draft copy ("pencil copy") of Application for Payment is a typical practice. Retain subparagraph below with "Payment Application Times" Paragraph retained above if required.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- F. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.

1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- G. Transmittal: Submit signed and notarized electronic copies of each Application for Payment to Architect. Copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
- H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of values.
  3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
- J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
    - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."

2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
  3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 01 3100 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. Progress Photographs
  - 4. RFIs.
  - 5. Digital project management procedures.
  - 6. Web-based Project management software package.
  - 7. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7300 – Execution, for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 2. Section 01 7700 - Closeout Procedures, for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.

3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities, list addresses, cellular telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, in web-based Project software directory. Keep list current at all times.

## 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

## 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.

- b. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
  - c. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - d. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - e. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - f. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate sub-framing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switchboard, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.

8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
  - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that, in general, the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."

## 1.7 PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Submit photographs with each application for payment, taken not more than 3 days prior to submission of application for payment.
- B. Photography Type: Digital; electronic files.
- C. Provide photographs of site and construction throughout progress of work produced by an experienced photographer, acceptable to Architect.
- D. In addition to periodic, recurring views, take photographs of each of the following events:
  1. Upon completion of Building contents clearing.
  2. Upon completion of selective demolition.
  3. Periodic progress photos.
  4. Final completion.
- E. Views:
  1. Provide non-aerial photographs from four cardinal views at each specified time, until date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Consult with Architect for instructions on views required.
  3. Provide factual presentation.
  4. Provide correct exposure and focus, high resolution and sharpness, maximum depth of field, and minimum distortion.
- F. Digital Photographs: 24-bit color, minimum resolution of 1024 by 768, in JPG format; provide files unaltered by photo editing software.
  1. Delivery Medium: Via email.
  2. File Naming: Include project identification, date and time of view, and view identification.
  3. PDF File: Assemble all photos into printable pages in PDF format, with 2 to 3 photos per page, each photo labeled with file name; one PDF file per submittal.
  4. Hard Copy: Printed hardcopy of PDF file and point of view sketch.



## 1.8 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Owner name.
  3. Owner's Project number.
  4. Name of Architect.
  5. Architect's Project number.
  6. Date.
  7. Name of Contractor.
  8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  9. RFI subject.
  10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  14. Contractor's signature.
  15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow three days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.

- d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
  - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
  - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
  - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Include the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
  8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within three days if Contractor disagrees with response.

## 1.9 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Architect's Data Files Not Available: Architect will not provide Architect's BIM model and/or CAD drawing digital data files for Contractor's use during construction.
- B. Web-Based Project Management Software Package: Provide, administer, and use approved web-based Project management software package for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
  1. Web-based Project management software includes, at a minimum, the following features:
    - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.

- b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
  - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
  - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
  - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
  - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
  - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
  - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
  - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
  - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
  - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
  - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
2. At completion of Project, provide digital archive in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.
- C. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
  3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

## 1.10 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of seven days prior to meeting.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.

- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - f. Lines of communications.
    - g. Use of web-based Project software.
    - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - i. Procedures for RFIs.
    - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - m. Submittal procedures.
    - n. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - o. Use of the premises.
    - p. Work restrictions.
    - q. Working hours.
    - r. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - s. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - t. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - u. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - v. Parking availability.
    - w. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - x. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - y. First aid.
    - z. Security.
    - aa. Progress cleaning.
  3. Minutes: Contractor responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 30 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.

2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
    - d. Submittal of written warranties.
    - e. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - f. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - g. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - h. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - j. Submittal procedures.
  4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.

- 4) Deliveries.
  - 5) Off-site fabrication.
  - 6) Access.
  - 7) Site use.
  - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 9) Progress cleaning.
  - 10) Quality and work standards.
  - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
  - 12) Field observations.
  - 13) Status of RFIs.
  - 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
  - 15) Pending changes.
  - 16) Status of Change Orders.
  - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
  - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
- a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- E. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
    - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.

- 2) Sequence of operations.
  - 3) Status of submittals.
  - 4) Deliveries.
  - 5) Off-site fabrication.
  - 6) Access.
  - 7) Site use.
  - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
  - 9) Work hours.
  - 10) Hazards and risks.
  - 11) Progress cleaning.
  - 12) Quality and work standards.
  - 13) Status of RFIs.
  - 14) Proposal Requests.
  - 15) Change Orders.
  - 16) Pending changes.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 01 3300 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
  - 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
  - 2. Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
  - 3. Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements defining Basis-of-Design action Submittals.
  - 4. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
  - 5. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
  - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Initial Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those

- submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule as required to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
    - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    - j. Activity or event number.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
  1. Project name.
  2. Date.
  3. Name of Architect.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
  8. Category and type of submittal.
  9. Submittal purpose and description.
  10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
  11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  14. Other necessary identification.
  15. Remarks.
  16. Signature of transmitter.
- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include

relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.

1. Action Submittals: Submit 3 paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return 2 copies.
  2. Informational Submittals: Submit 2 paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  3. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
  4. Transmittal for Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using transmittal form.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- E. Submittals Utilizing Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files or other format indicated by Project management software.

## 1.5 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.
  2. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project management software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
  3. Paper: Prepare submittals in paper form and deliver to Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.

- a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
  5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
    - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
  1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.

- b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed or digital data.
  1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
    - a. Two opaque (bond) copies of each submittal. Architect will return one copy.
  3. BIM Incorporation: Contractor will incorporate Contractor's Shop Drawing files into BIM established for Project.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
  1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.

- b. Generic description of Sample.
  - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
  - d. Sample source.
  - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
  - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
4. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
5. Paper Transmittal: Include paper transmittal, including complete submittal information indicated.
6. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
  - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
  - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
7. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
  - a. Number of Samples: Submit two full sets of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
8. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
  - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
    - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- H. Test and Research Reports:
1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
  2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

## 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal. Review of Basis-of-Design Action submittals for consideration shall clearly define and prominently highlight the comparable specifics, attributes, features and other salient characteristics of the published Basis-of-Design products.
- B. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- C. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

## 1.8 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return.



1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
  2. Paper Submittals: Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
  3. Submittals by Web-Based Project Management Software: Architect will indicate, on Project management software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 01 4000 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).

- D. Mockups: Physical assemblies of portions of the Work constructed to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged. Mockups are not Samples.
  - 1. Mockups are used for one or more of the following:
    - a. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
    - b. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
    - c. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.
    - d. Demonstrate successful installation of interfaces between components and systems.
    - e. Perform preconstruction testing to determine system performance.
  - 2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
  - 3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual product incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

#### 1.4 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

## 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Mockup Shop Drawings:
  1. Include plans, sections, elevations, and details, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

## 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.

2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
1. Specification Section number and title.
  2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  3. Description of test and inspection.
  4. Identification of applicable standards.
  5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests

- and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
  3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by Commissioning Authority.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.9 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
  2. Project title and number.
  3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  8. Complete test or inspection data.
  9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
  11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.

4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

## 1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists will satisfy qualification requirements indicated and engage in the activities indicated.



1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following Contractor's responsibilities, including the following:
1. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
  2. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  3. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
  4. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
  5. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  6. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups of size indicated.
  2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
  5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.

6. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
  8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Specialty Mockups: See Section 01 4339 "Mockups" for additional construction requirements.

## 1.11 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances specified in Section 01 2100 "Allowances," as authorized by Change Orders.
  3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor will not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
  - 1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  - 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  - 6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
  - 1. Access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
  - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update and submit with each Application for Payment.
  - 1. Schedule Contents: Include tests, inspections, and quality-control services, including Contractor- and Owner-retained services, commissioning activities, and other Project-required services paid for by other entities.
  - 2. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

## 1.12 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner and as follows:
  - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  - 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.

3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

### **3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 7300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 01 4200 REFERENCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### 1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For standards referenced by applicable building codes, comply with dates of standards as listed in building codes.

- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

### 1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. The information in this list is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; [www.aabc.com](http://www.aabc.com).
  - 2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; (See FGIA).
  - 3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; [www.aapfco.org](http://www.aapfco.org).
  - 4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; [www.transportation.org](http://www.transportation.org).
  - 5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; [www.aatcc.org](http://www.aatcc.org).
  - 6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; [www.americanbearings.org](http://www.americanbearings.org).
  - 7. ABMA - American Boiler Manufacturers Association; [www.abma.com](http://www.abma.com).
  - 8. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); [www.concrete.org](http://www.concrete.org).
  - 9. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; [www.concrete-pipe.org](http://www.concrete-pipe.org).
  - 10. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); [www.aeic.org](http://www.aeic.org).
  - 11. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; [www.afandpa.org](http://www.afandpa.org).
  - 12. AGA - American Gas Association; [www.aga.org](http://www.aga.org).
  - 13. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; [www.aham.org](http://www.aham.org).
  - 14. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); [www.ahrinet.org](http://www.ahrinet.org).
  - 15. AI - Asphalt Institute; [www.asphaltinstitute.org](http://www.asphaltinstitute.org).
  - 16. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); [www.aia.org](http://www.aia.org).
  - 17. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; [www.aisc.org](http://www.aisc.org).
  - 18. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; [www.steel.org](http://www.steel.org).
  - 19. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; [www.plib.org](http://www.plib.org).
  - 20. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; [www.amca.org](http://www.amca.org).
  - 21. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org).
  - 22. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; [www.aosaseed.com](http://www.aosaseed.com).
  - 23. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).
  - 24. APA - Architectural Precast Association; [www.archprecast.org](http://www.archprecast.org).
  - 25. API - American Petroleum Institute; [www.api.org](http://www.api.org).
  - 26. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
  - 27. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
  - 28. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; [www.asphaltroofing.org](http://www.asphaltroofing.org).



29. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; [www.asce.org](http://www.asce.org).
30. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
31. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; [www.ashrae.org](http://www.ashrae.org).
32. ASME - ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); [www.asme.org](http://www.asme.org).
33. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; [www.asse-plumbing.org](http://www.asse-plumbing.org).
34. ASSP - American Society of Safety Professionals (The); [www.assp.org](http://www.assp.org).
35. ASTM - ASTM International; [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org).
36. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; [www.atis.org](http://www.atis.org).
37. AVIXA - Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association; (Formerly: Infocomm International); [www.avixa.org](http://www.avixa.org).
38. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; [www.awea.org](http://www.awea.org).
39. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
40. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; [www.awmac.com](http://www.awmac.com).
41. AWPA - American Wood Protection Association; [www.awpa.com](http://www.awpa.com).
42. AWS - American Welding Society; [www.aws.org](http://www.aws.org).
43. AWWA - American Water Works Association; [www.awwa.org](http://www.awwa.org).
44. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; [www.buildershardware.com](http://www.buildershardware.com).
45. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); [www.gobrick.com](http://www.gobrick.com).
46. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; [www.bicsi.org](http://www.bicsi.org).
47. BIFMA - BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); [www.bifma.org](http://www.bifma.org).
48. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
49. BWF - Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
50. CDA - Copper Development Association; [www.copper.org](http://www.copper.org).
51. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; [www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com](http://www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com).
52. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; [www.cfsei.org](http://www.cfsei.org).
53. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; [www.cganet.com](http://www.cganet.com).
54. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.cellulose.org](http://www.cellulose.org).
55. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
56. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; [www.cispi.org](http://www.cispi.org).
57. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; [www.chainlinkinfo.org](http://www.chainlinkinfo.org).
58. CPA - Composite Panel Association; [www.compositepanel.org](http://www.compositepanel.org).
59. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org).
60. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; [www.coolroofs.org](http://www.coolroofs.org).
61. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; [www.crsi.org](http://www.crsi.org).
62. CSA - CSA Group; [www.csa-group.org](http://www.csa-group.org).
63. CSI - Cast Stone Institute; [www.caststone.org](http://www.caststone.org).
64. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); [www.csiresources.org](http://www.csiresources.org).
65. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; [www.cedarbureau.org](http://www.cedarbureau.org).
66. CTA - Consumer Technology Association; [www.cta.tech](http://www.cta.tech).
67. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); [www.coolingtechnology.org](http://www.coolingtechnology.org).
68. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
69. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; [www.dasma.com](http://www.dasma.com).

70. DHA - Decorative Hardwoods Association; (Formerly: Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association); [www.decorativehardwoods.org](http://www.decorativehardwoods.org).
71. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; [www.dhi.org](http://www.dhi.org).
72. ECA - Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
73. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association.
74. ECIA - Electronic Components Industry Association; [www.ecianow.org](http://www.ecianow.org).
75. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
76. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; [www.eima.com](http://www.eima.com).
77. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.ejma.org](http://www.ejma.org).
78. EOS/ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); [www.esda.org](http://www.esda.org).
79. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
80. ETL - Intertek (See Intertek); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
81. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; [www.evo-world.org](http://www.evo-world.org).
82. FCI - Fluid Controls Institute; [www.fluidcontrolsintstitute.org](http://www.fluidcontrolsintstitute.org).
83. FGIA - Fenestration and Glazing Industry Alliance; <https://fgiaonline.org>.
84. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; [www.fmapprovals.com](http://www.fmapprovals.com).
85. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
86. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal Contractors Association, Inc.; [www.floridarroof.com](http://www.floridarroof.com).
87. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; [www.fluidsealing.com](http://www.fluidsealing.com).
88. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; [www.fscus.org](http://www.fscus.org).
89. GA - Gypsum Association; [www.gypsum.org](http://www.gypsum.org).
90. GANA - Glass Association of North America; (See NGA).
91. GS - Green Seal; [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org).
92. HI - Hydraulic Institute; [www.pumps.org](http://www.pumps.org).
93. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
94. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
95. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; (See DHA).
96. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; [www.iapsc.org](http://www.iapsc.org).
97. IAS - International Accreditation Service; [www.iasonline.org](http://www.iasonline.org).
98. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
99. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
100. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; [www.icea.net](http://www.icea.net).
101. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Association; [www.theicpa.com](http://www.theicpa.com).
102. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; [www.icri.org](http://www.icri.org).
103. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; [www.iec.ch](http://www.iec.ch).
104. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); [www.ieee.org](http://www.ieee.org).
105. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); [www.ies.org](http://www.ies.org).
106. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
107. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; [www.iest.org](http://www.iest.org).
108. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; (See FGIA).
109. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; [www.igshpa.org](http://www.igshpa.org).
110. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; [www.iliai.com](http://www.iliai.com).
111. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
112. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); [www.isa.org](http://www.isa.org).
113. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).

114. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); [www.isfanow.org](http://www.isfanow.org).
115. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
116. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
117. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; [www.itu.int](http://www.itu.int).
118. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; [www.kcma.org](http://www.kcma.org).
119. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
120. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; [www.lightning.org](http://www.lightning.org).
121. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; [www.mbma.com](http://www.mbma.com).
122. MCA - Metal Construction Association; [www.metalconstruction.org](http://www.metalconstruction.org).
123. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.maplefloor.org](http://www.maplefloor.org).
124. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.metalframingmfg.org](http://www.metalframingmfg.org).
125. MHI - Material Handling Industry; [www.mhi.org](http://www.mhi.org).
126. MIA - Marble Institute of America; (See NSI).
127. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; [www.wmmpa.com](http://www.wmmpa.com).
128. MPI - Master Painters Institute; [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
129. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; [www.mss-hq.org](http://www.mss-hq.org).
130. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; [www.naamm.org](http://www.naamm.org).
131. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); [www.nace.org](http://www.nace.org).
132. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; [www.nadca.com](http://www.nadca.com).
133. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.naima.org](http://www.naima.org).
134. NALP - National Association of Landscape Professionals; [www.landscapeprofessionals.org](http://www.landscapeprofessionals.org).
135. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; [www.nbgqa.com](http://www.nbgqa.com).
136. NBI - New Buildings Institute; [www.newbuildings.org](http://www.newbuildings.org).
137. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); [www.ncaa.org](http://www.ncaa.org).
138. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; [www.ncma.org](http://www.ncma.org).
139. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; [www.nebb.org](http://www.nebb.org).
140. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; [www.necanet.org](http://www.necanet.org).
141. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; [www.nelma.org](http://www.nelma.org).
142. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; [www.nema.org](http://www.nema.org).
143. NETA - International Electrical Testing Association; [www.netaworld.org](http://www.netaworld.org).
144. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; [www.nfhs.org](http://www.nfhs.org).
145. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org).
146. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
147. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; [www.nfrc.org](http://www.nfrc.org).
148. NGA - National Glass Association (The); (Formerly: Glass Association of North America); [www.glass.org](http://www.glass.org).
149. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; [www.nhla.com](http://www.nhla.com).
150. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; [www.nlga.org](http://www.nlga.org).
151. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
152. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; [www.nomma.org](http://www.nomma.org).
153. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; [www.nrca.net](http://www.nrca.net).
154. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; [www.nrmca.org](http://www.nrmca.org).
155. NSF - NSF International; [www.nsf.org](http://www.nsf.org).

156. NSI - National Stone Institute; (Formerly: Marble Institute of America); [www.naturalstoneinstitute.org](http://www.naturalstoneinstitute.org).
157. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; [www.nspe.org](http://www.nspe.org).
158. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; [www.nssga.org](http://www.nssga.org).
159. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); [www.ntma.com](http://www.ntma.com).
160. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; [www.nwfa.org](http://www.nwfa.org).
161. NWRA - National Waste & Recycling Association; [www.wasterecycling.org](http://www.wasterecycling.org)
162. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; [www.pci.org](http://www.pci.org).
163. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; [www.pdionline.org](http://www.pdionline.org).
164. PLASA - PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association); [www.plasa.org](http://www.plasa.org).
165. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; [www.boltcouncil.org](http://www.boltcouncil.org).
166. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; [www.rfci.com](http://www.rfci.com).
167. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; [www.redwoodinspection.com](http://www.redwoodinspection.com).
168. SAE - SAE International; [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).
169. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; [www.scte.org](http://www.scte.org).
170. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; [www.sdi.org](http://www.sdi.org).
171. SDI - Steel Door Institute; [www.steeldoor.org](http://www.steeldoor.org).
172. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); [www.sefalabs.com](http://www.sefalabs.com).
173. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
174. SIA - Security Industry Association; [www.siaonline.org](http://www.siaonline.org).
175. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; [www.steeljoist.org](http://www.steeljoist.org).
176. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; [www.smainfo.org](http://www.smainfo.org).
177. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; [www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org).
178. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; [www.smpte.org](http://www.smpte.org).
179. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; [www.sprayfoam.org](http://www.sprayfoam.org).
180. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; [www.spib.org](http://www.spib.org).
181. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; [www.spri.org](http://www.spri.org).
182. SRCC - Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; [www.solar-rating.org](http://www.solar-rating.org).
183. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; [www.ssina.com](http://www.ssina.com).
184. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; [www.sspc.org](http://www.sspc.org).
185. STI - Steel Tank Institute; [www.steeltank.com](http://www.steeltank.com).
186. SWI - Steel Window Institute; [www.steelwindows.com](http://www.steelwindows.com).
187. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; [www.swpa.org](http://www.swpa.org).
188. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; [www.tilt-up.org](http://www.tilt-up.org).
189. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; [www.tileusa.com](http://www.tileusa.com).
190. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.tema.org](http://www.tema.org).
191. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association (The); (Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); [www.tiaonline.org](http://www.tiaonline.org).
192. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
193. TMS - The Masonry Society; [www.masonrysociety.org](http://www.masonrysociety.org).
194. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; [www.tpinst.org](http://www.tpinst.org).
195. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; [www.turfgrasssod.org](http://www.turfgrasssod.org).
196. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; [www.tilerroofing.org](http://www.tilerroofing.org).
197. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; [www.ul.com](http://www.ul.com).
198. UL LLC - UL LLC; [www.ul.com](http://www.ul.com).

199. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; [www.uni-bell.org](http://www.uni-bell.org).
200. USAV - USA Volleyball; [www.usavolleyball.org](http://www.usavolleyball.org).
201. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; [www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org).
202. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; [www.usitt.org](http://www.usitt.org).
203. WA - Wallcoverings Association; [www.wallcoverings.org](http://www.wallcoverings.org).
204. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; [www.wclib.org](http://www.wclib.org).
205. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; [www.wcmanet.org](http://www.wcmanet.org).
206. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; [www.wdma.com](http://www.wdma.com).
207. WI - Woodwork Institute; [www.wicnet.org](http://www.wicnet.org).
208. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; [www.wsrca.com](http://www.wsrca.com).
209. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; [www.wwpa.org](http://www.wwpa.org).

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).
2. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
3. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
4. DOD - Department of Defense; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
5. DOE - Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
8. FG - Federal Government Publications; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
9. GSA - General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; [www.eetd.lbl.gov](http://www.eetd.lbl.gov).
12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
13. SD - Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
17. USDOJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
19. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).

- E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 01 5000 TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### 1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Owner will pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Owner will pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Owner will pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
- E. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- F. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.
- C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- D. Noise and Vibration Control Plan: Identify construction activities that may impact the occupancy and use of existing spaces within the building or adjacent existing buildings, whether occupied by others, or occupied by the Owner. Include the following:
  - 1. Methods used to meet the goals and requirements of the Owner.
  - 2. Location of construction devices on the site.
  - 3. Show compliance with the use and maintenance of quieted construction devices for the duration of the Project.
  - 4. Indicate activities that may disturb building occupants and that are planned to be performed during non-standard working hours as coordinated with the Owner.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete or galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.
- B. Fencing Windscreen Privacy Screen: Polyester fabric scrim with grommets for attachment to chain-link fence, sized to height of fence, in color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less in accordance with ASTM E84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.

### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
  - 3. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  - 4. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

### 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
  - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.
- C. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
  - 1. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust-containment devices.
  - 2. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.

### 3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.

### 3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:

- B. Parking: No Dedicated parking areas for construction personnel.
- C. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- D. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
  - 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  - 3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- E. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
  - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- F. Temporary Elevator Use: Use of elevators is not permitted.
- G. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
  - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- C. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- D. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals, so Project will be free of pests and their residues at

Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- E. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
- F. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- G. Temporary Egress: Provide temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide signage directing occupants to temporary egress.
- H. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- I. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied from fumes and noise.
  - 1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard, with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant-treated plywood on construction operations side.

### 3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 01 5723 TEMPORARY STORM WATER POLLUTION CONTROL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Temporary stormwater pollution controls.

#### 1.3 STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN

- A. The Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) is part of the Contract Documents and is bound into this Project Manual.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, and earthwork subcontractor.
  - 2. Review requirements of the SWPPP, including permitting process, worker training, and inspection and maintenance requirements.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPP): Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit completed SWPPP.
- B. EPA authorization under the EPA's "2017 Construction General Permit (CGP)."
- C. Stormwater Pollution Prevention (SWPP) Training Log: For each individual performing Work under the SWPPP.
- D. Inspection reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) Coordinator: Experienced individual or firm with a record of successful water pollution control management coordination of projects with similar requirements.
  - 1. SWPPP Coordinator shall complete and finalize the SWPPP form.
  - 2. SWPPP Coordinator shall be responsible for inspections and maintaining of all requirements of the SWPPP.
- B. Installers: Trained as indicated in the SWPPP.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TEMPORARY STORMWATER POLLUTION CONTROLS

- A. Provide temporary stormwater pollution controls as required by the SWPPP.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with all best management practices, general requirements, performance requirements, reporting requirements, and all other requirements included in the SWPPP.
- B. Locate stormwater pollution controls in accordance with the SWPPP.
- C. Conduct construction as required to comply with the SWPPP and that minimize possible contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Inspect, repair, and maintain SWPPP controls during construction.
    - a. Inspect all SWPPP controls not less than every seven days, and after each occurrence of a storm event, as outlined in the SWPPP.
- D. Remove SWPPP controls at completion of construction and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during construction.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 01 6000 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
  - 2. Section 01 4200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
  - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.



1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles. Note that no substitutions for convenience are allowed per Section 01 2500.
  1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Approval: As specified in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Substitution: Refer to Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
  1. Resolution of Compatibility Disputes between Multiple Contractors:
    - a. Contractors are responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
    - b. If a dispute arises between the multiple contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.

1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
  - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
  - b. Model and serial number.
  - c. Capacity.
  - d. Speed.
  - e. Ratings.
3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

## 1.7 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.

4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.8 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
  1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
  3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
  1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.

4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
  - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
  - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
  - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution if the product complies with requirements.
5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

- a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
  - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
  - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
  - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
  1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
  1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such

- as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  5. Samples, if requested.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 01 7300 EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner's portion of the Work.
  - 6. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 7. Progress cleaning.
  - 8. Starting and adjusting.
  - 9. Protection of installed construction.
  - 10. Correction of the Work.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for coordination of Owner-furnished products and limits on use of Project site.
  - 2. Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.
  - 4. Section 02 4119 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.
  - 5. Section 07 8413 Penetration Firestopping for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
  
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Cutting and Patching Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.



1. Prior to commencing work requiring cutting and patching, review extent of cutting and patching anticipated and examine procedures for ensuring satisfactory result from cutting and patching work. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cutting and patching to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Trade supervisor responsible for cutting operations.
    - c. Trade supervisor(s) responsible for patching of each type of substrate.
    - d. Mechanical, electrical, and utilities subcontractors' supervisors, to the extent each trade is affected by cutting and patching operations.
  2. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- B. Layout Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Prior to establishing layout, review building location requirements. Review benchmark, control point, and layout and dimension requirements. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with Project layout to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
  2. Review meanings and intent of dimensions, notes, terms, graphic symbols, and other layout information indicated on the Drawings.
  3. Review requirements for including layouts on Shop Drawings and other submittals.
  4. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 10 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
  2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
  3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
  4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.
    - a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Professional Engineer Qualifications: Refer to Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements."
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
  - 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
  - 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
    - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
    - b. Fire separation assemblies.
    - c. Air or smoke barriers.
    - d. Fire-suppression systems.
    - e. Plumbing piping systems.
    - f. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
    - g. Control systems.
    - h. Communication systems.
    - i. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
    - j. Conveying systems.
    - k. Electrical wiring systems.
    - l. Operating systems of special construction.
  - 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
    - b. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
    - c. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
    - d. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
  - 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
  - 1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with sustainable design requirements.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.
- C. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
  - 1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
  - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.

4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
  1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

### 3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching in accordance with requirements in Section 01 1000 "Summary."
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
  - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.

- a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
  - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
  - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch, corner to corner of wall and edge to edge of ceiling. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.6 COORDINATION OF OWNER'S PORTION OF THE WORK

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel and Owner's separate contractors.
  1. Provide temporary facilities required for Owner-furnished, Contractor-installed and Owner-furnished, Owner-installed products.
  2. Refer to Section 01 1000 "Summary" for other requirements for Owner-furnished, Contractor-installed and Owner-furnished, Owner-installed products.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel and Owner's separate contractors.
  1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
  2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel and Owner's separate contractors at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.



- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### **3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements."

### **3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

### **3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK**

- A. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- D. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- E. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.

- F. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 01 7700 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2. Final completion procedures.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2900 - Payment Procedures for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial Completion and Final Completion.
  - 2. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 3. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 4. Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items required by other Sections.

## 1.7 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
  - 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  - 6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
  - 7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.

5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training."
  6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
  7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
  10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

## 1.8 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures."
  2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  4. Submit Final Completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

## 1.9 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, listed by room or space number.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.
  4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
    - a. Web-Based Project Software Upload: Utilize software feature for creating and updating list of incomplete items (punch list).

## 1.10 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- C. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- D. Warranties in Paper Form:
1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.

- E. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - c. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - d. Clean exposed hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - e. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - f. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.
    - g. Vacuum and mop concrete.
    - h. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - i. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - j. Remove labels that are not permanent.



- k. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - l. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - m. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - n. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
    - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA ACR. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
  - o. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
  - p. Clean strainers.
  - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 01 7300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 01 7839 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7700 - Closeout Procedures for general closeout procedures.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set of marked-up record prints.
  - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit Record Digital Data Files and one set of plots.
      - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned Record Prints and one set of file prints.
      - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
    - c. Final Submittal:

- 1) Submit Record Digital Data Files and one set of Record Digital Data File plots.
  - 2) Plot each drawing file, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report indicating items incorporated into Project Record Documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

#### 1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.

- j. Changes made by Change Order or Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
  1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as for the original Contract Drawings.
  2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
  1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
  2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  4. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

## 1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
  - 5. Note related Change Orders and Record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

## 1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders and Record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit Record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.
  - 1. Include Record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of Record Product Data.

## 1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up miscellaneous record submittals.
  - 1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 02 4119 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
  - 2. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 - Summary, for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
  - 2. Section 01 7300 - Execution, for cutting and patching procedures.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

#### 1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.



3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- B. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  4. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- C. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage and demolition operations.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Neighboring, occupied spaces and public ways are immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so nearby operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- C. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  1. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.

- E. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding. Existing warranties include the following:

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.

### 3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.

- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
  3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
    - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
    - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
    - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
    - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
    - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 4 hours after flame-cutting operations.
  6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  8. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  9. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.5 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site [and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 04 2000 UNIT MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Concrete masonry units.
  2. Mortar and grout materials.
  3. Reinforcement.
  4. Ties and anchors.
  5. Accessories.
  6. Mortar and grout mixes.
- B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
- C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation for cavity wall insulation.
  2. Section 05500 - Metal Fabrications for furnishing steel lintels for unit masonry.
  3. Section 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Abbreviations and Acronyms:
1. ACI: American Concrete Institute.
  2. ASTM: ASTM International.
  3. TMS: Masonry Society (The), American Concrete Institute, and American Society of Civil Engineers.
  4. SMACNA: Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association.
- B. Reference Standards: The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.
1. ACI 315: Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement.
  2. ASTM A 82: Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
  3. ASTM A 153: Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  4. ASTM A 615: Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
  5. ASTM A 653: Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  6. ASTM A 951: Specification for Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement.

7. ASTM A 996: Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
8. ASTM A 1008: Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable.
9. ASTM B 117: Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus. 1
10. ASTM C 90: Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units.
11. ASTM C 143: Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.
12. ASTM C 144: Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
13. ASTM C 150: Specification for Portland Cement.
14. ASTM C 207: Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
15. ASTM C 270: Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.
16. ASTM C 404: Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout.
17. ASTM C 494: Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
18. ASTM C 476: Specification for Grout for Masonry.
19. ASTM C 954: Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. to 0.112 in. in Thickness.
20. ASTM C 979: Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.
21. ASTM C 1019: Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout.
22. ASTM C 1314: Test Method for Compressive Strength of Masonry Prisms.
23. ASTM D 226: Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing.
24. ASTM D 1056: Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials—Sponge or Expanded Rubber.
25. ASTM E 514: Test Method for Water Penetration and Leakage Through Masonry.
26. TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6: Specification for Masonry Structures.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
  1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes. Show control joints and expansion joints, indicating locations and details.
  2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement". Show elevations of reinforced walls.
  3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications. Show profiles, material thicknesses, and identify sealant types used at terminations and lapped joints.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
1. Exposed CMUs.
  2. Accessories embedded in masonry.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
1. Submittal is for information only. Receipt of list does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
- B. Material Certificates: For each type of the following:
1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include data on material properties.
    - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances. Retain first subparagraph below only if retaining unit-strength method in "Performance Requirements" Article or if requirements for average net-area compressive strength of units are retained in Part 2.
  2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
  3. Mortar admixtures.
  4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  6. Reinforcing bars.
  7. Joint reinforcement.
  8. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- C. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.



1. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- D. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined in accordance with TMS 602.
- E. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  1. Installers: All masonry flashing installers must complete the International Masonry Institute Flashing Upgrade training course.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- D. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.
- E. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements Section 01 3100 - Project Management and Coordination.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained, and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.

- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- B. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- C. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.

1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314.

## 2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C90, normal weight unless otherwise indicated.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi.
  2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
  3. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.
  4. Faces to Receive Plaster: Where units are indicated to receive a direct application of plaster, provide textured-face units made with gap-graded aggregates.
- C. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C55, normal weight unless otherwise indicated.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi.

## 2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
1. Alkali content will not be more than 0.1 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Argos USA LLC.
  - b. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.
  - c. Fairborn Cement Company.
  - d. Federal White Cement, Ltd.
  - e. Holcim (US) Inc.
  - f. Lafarge North America Inc.
  - g. Lehigh Hanson; HeidelbergCement Group.
  - h. Lehigh White Cement Company.
  - i. Quikrete; The QUIKRETE Companies, LLC.
  - j. Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG.
- E. Preblended Dry Mortar Mix: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime, masonry cement or mortar cement, sand, mortar pigments, water repellents, and admixtures and complying with ASTM C1714/C1714M.
1. Preblended Dry Portland Cement Mortar Mix:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Amerimix is a trademark of Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
      - 2) Quikrete; The QUIKRETE Companies, LLC.
      - 3) SPEC MIX, LLC.
  2. Preblended Dry Masonry Cement Mortar Mix
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Amerimix is a trademark of Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
      - 2) SPEC MIX, LLC.
- F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
  3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- G. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.

## 2.5 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60.
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-

inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
  - b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
  - c. Wire-Bond.

C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A951/A951M.

1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
2. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
3. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
4. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
5. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 ft..

D. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder type with single pair of side rods.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
  - b. Wire-Bond.

## 2.6 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
2. Use masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
3. For exterior masonry, use masonry cement or mortar cement] mortar.

B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.

C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.

1. For reinforced masonry, use Type N.
2. For interior nonload-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  - 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- G. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

### 3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft., 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., 3/8 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft., 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., 3/8 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- E. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- G. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Build nonload-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors, and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Wedge nonload-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
  - 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 07 8400 - Firestopping and Firesafing.

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay CMUs as follows:
  - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  - 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.



- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For glazed masonry units, use a nonmetallic jointer 3/4 inch or more in width.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide continuity with masonry-joint reinforcement at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units as well as masonry bonding.
- F. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are indicated at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
  - 1. Provide individual metal ties not more than 8 inches o.c.
  - 2. Provide continuity with masonry-joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
  - 3. Provide rigid metal anchors not more than 24 inches o.c. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.

### 3.6 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

### 3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  - 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
  - 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

### 3.8 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
  - 6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
  - 7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic masonry cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.9 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

- B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 05 5000 METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes the following: (Note, not every component may be in the project)
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
  - 3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 5. Shelf angles.
  - 6. Metal ladders.
  - 7. Ladder safety cages.
  - 8. Metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers.
  - 9. Metal Gratings and supports.
  - 10. Structural-steel door frames.
  - 11. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel angle corner guards steel edgings and loading-dock edge angles.
  - 12. Steel pipe bollards.
  - 13. Pipe guards.
  - 14. Decorative Metal Railings
  - 15. Diamond Metal sheet and plate.
- B. Products that may be furnished, but not installed, under this Section:
  - 1. Loose steel lintels.
  - 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- C. Related Sections: (Note, not every components may be in the project)
  - 1. Structural drawings - "Cast-in-Place Concrete" note
  - 2. s for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
  - 3. Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
  - 4. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing."

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design ladders and alternating tread devices, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance of Alternating Tread Devices: Alternating tread devices shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ICC's International Building Code.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  - 2. Paint products.
  - 3. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing and tread.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages and steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METALS, GENERAL (Not every component or description indicated are in this project)

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

### 2.2 FERROUS METALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 23 percent.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- E. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- F. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.

- G. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
  - 1. Size of Channels: As indicated.
  - 2. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, Grade 33, with G90 coating; 0.079-inch nominal thickness.

## 2.3 NONFERROUS METALS

- A. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T6.
- C. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- D. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
- E. Aluminum diamond plate is manufactured in accordance with ASTM B632; aluminum alloy rolled tread plate.
- F. For anodic oxide coatings on aluminum, ASTM B580 is the standard

## 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  - 2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.

- F. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
- G. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3.
- H. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1.
- I. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
- J. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1.
- K. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1.
- L. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- M. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- N. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting," Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting," and Section 09 9600 "High-Performance Coatings."
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- E. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Structural Drawings' Concrete details and Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.



## 2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
  - 1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with primer specified in Section 09 9100 Painting and Staining.

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT RAILINGS AND GUARDS

- A. General:
  - 1. Pipe shall be standard weight pipe conforming to ASTM A53/A53M. Steel tubing shall conform to ASTM A501 or as designated on the drawings.
  - 2. Galvanized pipe and tubing shall be required when designated on the drawings.
  - 3. Sleeves shall be galvanized on all surfaces.
  - 4. Weathering steel shall be required when designated on the drawings.
- B. Comply with:
  - 1. American Welding Society (AWS):
    - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Structural Welding Code – Steel.
  - 2. ASTM International (ASTM):
    - a. ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and HotDipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
    - b. ASTM A501, Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.

## 2.9 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1.
- B. Steel Ladders:
  - 1. Space siderails 18 inches apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  - 3. Rungs: 3/4-inch-diameter steel bars.
  - 4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.

5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
6. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch in least dimension.
7. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
8. Galvanize ladders, including brackets and fasteners.

## 2.10 LADDER SAFETY CAGES

### A. General:

1. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than 48 inches o.c. between primary hoops.
3. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

### B. Steel Ladder Safety Cages:

1. Primary Hoops: 1/4-by-4-inch flat bar hoops.
2. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 1/4-by-2-inch flat bar hoops.
3. Vertical Bars: 3/16-by-1-1/2-inch flat bars secured to each hoop.
4. Galvanize ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.

## 2.11 METAL SHIPS' LADDERS AND PIPE CROSSOVERS

### A. Provide metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers where indicated. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.

1. Fabricate ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including railings from steel .
2. Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating . Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch in least dimension.
3. Fabricate treads from rolled-steel floor plate .
4. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Section 05 5213 "Pipe and Tube Railings."

### B. Galvanize steel ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

## 2.12 METAL GRATINGS

### A. Fabricate gratings to support live loads specified and a concentrated load as specified.

1. Provide clearance at all sides to permit easy removal of grating.
2. Fabricate sections of grating with end-banding bars.
3. Provide grating sections where indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1 inch in least dimension.
4. Provide steel angle supports as indicated.
5. Butt or miter, and weld angle frame at corners.

B. Aluminum Bar Gratings:

1. Fabricate grating and frame assembly from aluminum as shown in accordance with Metal Bar Grating Manual.
2. Use 1 x 3/16 inch minimum size bearing bars.
3. Mill finish unless specified otherwise.

## 2.13 STRUCTURAL-STEEL DOOR FRAMES

- A. Fabricate structural-steel door frames from steel shapes, plates, and bars of size and to dimensions indicated, fully welded together, with 5/8-by-1-1/2-inch steel channel stops, unless otherwise indicated. Plug-weld built-up members and continuously weld exposed joints. Secure removable stops to frame with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced at not more than 10 inches o.c. Reinforce frames and drill and tap as necessary to accept finish hardware.
1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for securing door frames into adjoining concrete or masonry.
- B. Extend bottom of frames to floor elevation indicated with steel angle clips welded to frames for anchoring frame to floor with expansion shields and bolts.
- C. Galvanize exterior steel frames.

## 2.14 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

## 2.15 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Pipe Bollards:

1. Fabricate in-ground bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe. At bollards provide concrete fill with rounded cap as indicated.
  2. Size for 48" under finish grade installation
  3. Galvanize exterior bollards
- B. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch-thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch anchor bolts.
1. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.
- C. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe with 1/4-inch-thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of bollard.
- D. Fabricate internal sleeves for removable bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe or 1/4-inch wall-thickness steel tubing with an OD approximately 1/16 inch less than ID of bollards. Match drill sleeve and bollard for 3/4 inch steel machine bolt.
- E. Prime bollards with primer specified in Section 09 9100 – Painting and Staining

## 2.16 METAL RAILINGS

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces. E. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- D. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- E. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- F. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap. 3. Remove flux immediately.

3. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds; no evidence of a welded joint.
- H. Form changes in direction as follows: 1. As detailed. Decorative Metal Railings 057300 - 8 2. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.
- I. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- J. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- K. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns, unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- L. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crushresistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and to prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- M. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- N. Steel Railing Finishes:
  1. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, but galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
  2. Preparing Nongalvanized Items for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements of Section 09 9100 - Painting and Staining.
  3. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No.1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

## 2.17 STEEL GATES

- A. Dumpster enclosure swing gates:
  1. Fabricate pair, 6'-0" tall welded steel gates with 3/4" square vertical bars at 5" centers.
  2. Gate posts shall be Sched 40 steel pipe sized for in ground installation.
- B. Steel Hinges shall be welded.
- C. Hardware shall be sized to securely lock and operate the pair gates.

1. Include complete hardware assembly, cane bolts, latches locks, etc
- D. Prime and paint gates, posts and hardware as specified in Section 09 9100 – Painting and Staining.
- E. Fence pickets shall be fitted with PVC privacy slats sized for the 3/4" square vertical bars as provided by OrnamentalFacePrivacySlats.com (800) 878-7829

## 2.18 PIPE GUARDS

- A. Fabricate pipe guards from 3/8-inch-thick by 12-inch-wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with 2-inch clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two 3/4-inch anchor bolts.
- B. Galvanize pipe guards.

## 2.19 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.

## 2.20 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

## 2.21 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## 2.22 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## 2.23 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 3. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Section 09 9600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 4. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.



4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

### 3.3 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
  1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
- B. Anchor bollards to existing construction with anchor bolts. Provide four 3/4-inch bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches in concrete.
- C. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- D. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in [concrete by inserting into pipe sleeves preset into concrete] [formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of sleeve]. Fill annular space around internal sleeves solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward internal sleeve.
- E. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align sleeves in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace sleeves in position until concrete has cured.

- F. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 3/4-inch machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. Owner will furnish padlocks.
- G. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
  - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

### **3.4 INSTALLING PIPE GUARDS**

- A. Provide pipe guards at exposed vertical pipes in parking garage where not protected by curbs or other barriers. Install by bolting to wall or column with expansion anchors. Provide four 3/4-inch bolts at each pipe guard. Mount pipe guards with top edge 26 inches above driving surface.

### **3.5 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES**

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
  - 1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

### **3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 05 7313 GLAZED DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Glazed decorative metal railings.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Railings: Guards, handrails, and similar devices used for protection of occupants at open-sided floor and exterior deck areas and for pedestrian guidance and support, visual separation, or wall protection.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Metal railings assembled from standard components.
  - 2. Glass products.
  - 3. Glazing cement and accessories for structural glass railings.
  - 4. Sealant and accessories for structural glass railings.
  - 5. Fasteners.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.

1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
  2. Base channel.
  3. Each type of glass and glass edge required.
  4. Fittings and brackets.
  5. Assembled Samples of railing systems, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, structural glass balusters, and glass-infill panels. Show method of finishing members at intersections. Samples need not be full height.
- E. Delegated Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless steel products, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- B. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, in accordance with ASTM E894, ASTM E935, ASTM E2353, and ASTM E2358.
- C. Evaluation Reports: From ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. For glazed decorative metal railings.
- D. Preconstruction test reports.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  1. Build mockups as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Build mockups for each form and finish of glass-infill panel railing consisting of two posts, top rail, handrail, glass-infill panel, and anchorage system components that are full height and are not less than 24 inches in length.
  3. Build mockups for each form and finish of structural glass railing consisting of top rail, structural glass, base channel, and anchorage system components that are full height and are not less than 24 inches in length.
  4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Glazed decorative metal railing manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazed decorative metal railings, including attachment to building construction.
- B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
  - 1. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
  - 2. Glass: 25 percent of mean modulus of rupture (50 percent probability of breakage), as listed in "Mechanical Properties" in AAMA CW-12, "Structural Properties of Glass."
- C. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
    - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
    - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 2. Structural Glass Railings and Glass-Infill Panels:
    - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
    - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

## 2.2 GLAZED DECORATIVE METAL RAILINGS

- A. Source Limitations for Laminated Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Decorative Metal Railing Components: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each component and installation method.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in the Specifications establishes requirements for railing system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

## 2.3 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed) or ASTM A513/A513M.
- B. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A29/A29M, Grade 1010.

## 2.5 GLASS AND GLAZING PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with written instructions of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. NGA/GANA Publications: "GANA Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "GANA Glazing Manual."
- B. Safety Glazing: Glazing is to comply with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- C. Safety Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark glass with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label is to indicate

manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

- D. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Class 1 and low-iron clear, or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- E. Glazing Cement and Accessories for Structural Glass Railings: Glazing cement, setting blocks, shims, and related accessories as recommended or supplied by railing manufacturer for installing structural glazing in metal base channels.
- F. Sealant and Accessories for Structural Glass Railings: Sealant, gaskets, setting blocks, shims, and related accessories as recommended or supplied by railing manufacturer for installing structural glazing in metal base channels.
- G. Glazing Gaskets for Glass-Infill Panels: Glazing gaskets and related accessories as recommended or supplied by railing manufacturer for installing glass-infill panels in post-supported railings.

## 2.6 GLASS HANDRAILS AND GUARDS

- A. Tempered Glass Handrails and Guards: Provide products that have been tested for surface and edge compression in accordance with ASTM C1048 and for impact strength in accordance with 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
  - 1. Glass Color: Clear.
  - 2. Glass Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.7 FASTENERS

- A. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
  - 1. Type 304 stainless steel fasteners.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching railings to other work unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to design load, in accordance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308.



## 2.8 FABRICATION OF METAL RAILINGS

- A. Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Mechanical Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
  - 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- H. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- I. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- J. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, handrail brackets, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work where indicated.
  - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and to prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- K. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

## 2.9 FABRICATION OF GLASS PANELS AND BALUSTERS

- A. Fabricate glass to sizes and shapes required; provide for proper edge clearance and bite on glazing panels.
- B. Glass-Infill Panels: Provide laminated, tempered glass-infill panels.
  - 1. Edge Finish: Clean-cut or flat-grind edges to produce smooth, square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

## 2.10 METAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS, GENERAL

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions for installing glazed decorative metal railings, accessories, and other components.
- B. Windborne-Debris Resistance: Anchor glazed decorative metal railings to structure using anchoring method, fastener type, and fastening frequency identical to that used in windborne-debris-resistance testing.
- C. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal railings.
  - 1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
  - 2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
  - 3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
  - 4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of metal railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.

6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.
- D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
  - E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### 3.2 METAL RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections:
  1. Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components.
  2. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings.
  3. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated, but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches of post.

### 3.3 METAL ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  1. For aluminum railings, attach posts as indicated using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
  2. For copper-alloy railings, attach posts as indicated using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
  3. For stainless steel railings, weld flanges to posts and bolt to metal-supporting surfaces.
- B. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF GLASS BALUSTERS

- A. Structural Glass Railings:
  1. Install assembly to comply with railing manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Attach base channel to building structure, then insert and connect factory-fabricated and -assembled glass balusters[ if glass was bonded to base and top-rail channels in factory].
  3. For field-assembled balusters, attach base channel to building structure, insert glass in base channel, and bond with glazing cement.

- a. Support glass balusters in base channel at quarter points with channel-shaped setting blocks that also act as shims to maintain uniform space for glazing cement.
  4. Adjust spacing of glass balusters so gaps between balusters are equal before securing in position.
  5. Erect glass railings under direct supervision of manufacturer's authorized technical personnel.
- B. Post-Supported Railings with Glass-Infill Panels:
1. Install assembly to comply with railing manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in other Part 3 articles.
  2. Erect posts and other metal railing components, and set factory-cut glass-infill panels.
  3. Do not cut, drill, or alter glass-infill panels in field. Protect edges from damage.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Remove and replace railings where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements unless they can be repaired in a manner satisfactory to Architect and comply with specified requirements.
- B. Perform additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean and polish glass as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Wash both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 06 1000 ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Examine all Drawings and all other Sections of the Specifications for requirements therein affecting the work of this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Carpentry includes exterior and rough carpentry generally not exposed, unless otherwise specified. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Wood blocking and nailers.
  - 2. Wood furring and grounds.
  - 3. Plywood and Plywood backing Panels.
- B. Install the following furnished under the designated Sections:
  - 1. Concealed anchorage devices for handicap handrails in toilet rooms
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1600 - Sheathing
  - 2. Section 06 2000 - Finish Carpentry.
  - 3. Section 06 4100 - Architectural Casework.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal size or greater in least dimension.
- E. Lumber grading agencies, and abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.

2. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
3. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
4. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5664.
  4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
- B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates:
  1. For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  3. Engineered wood products.
  4. Power-driven fasteners.
  5. Post-installed anchors.
  6. Metal framing anchors.
  7. Sill sealer gasket/termite barrier.
- C. Qualification Statements: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BOARD AND SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Lumber for blocking, nailers and curbs as indicated or required: Hem-Fir, Douglas Fir, Eastern Spruce, Eastern Hemlock, or Southern Pine, surfaced dried stud or utility grade. Wood members shall be of sizes indicated on the Drawings or of the same size as the members being braced.
  - 1. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
  - 2. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.
- B. Furring: Nominal 1 by 3 inches or 1 by 4 inches Douglas Fir, Eastern Spruce, Eastern Hemlock, or Southern Pine, surfaced dried construction grade.
- C. Plywood and sheet products:
  - 1. Marine grade plywood: EWA MARINE A-A EXT, fir veneer marine grade plywood, with plugged cores and sanded faces .
  - 2. For substrate beneath gypsum board: Square edge APA graded C-D-X EXT, touch-sanded, 1/2 inch thick, except as otherwise indicated on the Drawings
  - 3. For electric panel board mountings and similar uses: APA graded B-D INT, Group 2 species, touch-sanded, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 inch thick, except as otherwise indicated on the Drawings.
  - 4. For unspecified interior concealed from view locations: APA graded C-D PLUGGED INT, Group 2 species, thickness as indicated on the Drawings.

### 2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Treated wood products shall be produced by a single treatment plant, fully licensed by the chemical manufacturers, and conforming to the requirements specified herein.
  - 1. Toxicity and Environmental Quality:
    - a. Products containing chromium will not be permitted.
    - b. Products containing arsenic will not be permitted.
    - c. Fire-retardant-treated wood products shall be free of halogens, sulfates, ammonium phosphate and formaldehyde.



2. Dye wood or otherwise color code all treated wood at treatment plant to clearly distinguish the different treatments in the field.
  3. Kiln dry all treated lumber and plywood to the following maximum moisture content after treatment.
    - a. Lumber: 19 percent.
    - b. Plywood 15 percent.
    - c. Discard pieces with defects which might impair quality of work.
  4. Quality marks: Each piece of lumber and plywood shall be permanently affixed with a quality mark, containing the following information:
    - a. Identification of the inspection agency.
    - b. Standard to which material was treated.
    - c. Identification of the treating plant.
    - d. Fire retardant treated wood shall include: Stamp signifying a FR-S rating.
    - e. Preservative treated wood shall include: Retention and end use for which product is suitable.
- B. Pressure preservative treated wood. Designated as "PT"
1. Chemical Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with the requirements specified herein, Products which may be incorporated in the work include:
    - a. Osmose, Inc., Griffin, GA., product "NatureWood".
    - b. Universal Forest Products, Inc., Grand Rapids, MI., product "ProWood ACQ".
    - c. Viance, LLC., Charlotte, NC., product "Preserve"
  2. Treatment: Ammoniacal Copper Quaternary Compound (ACQ), arsenic-free and chromium-free chemical "ACQ Preservative" in accordance with AWPA Standards. Apply the preservative in a closed cylinder by pressure process in accordance with AWPA Standard C15.
    - a. Minimum preservative retention for floor plates, framing, lumber and plywood above ground use: 0.25 pounds per cubic foot of ACQ chemical, in accordance with AWPA UC1, UC2, UC3A, and UC3B, or NER-643 as appropriate.
    - b. Minimum preservative retention for framing, lumber and plywood in contact with water, ground, concrete and masonry: 0.40 pounds per cubic foot of ACQ chemical, in accordance with AWPA UC4A, UC4B, UC4C, or NER-643 as appropriate.
    - c. Minimum preservative retention for lumber and plywood in permanent wood foundations: 0.60 pounds per cubic foot of ACQ chemical, in accordance with AWPA UC4B, or NER-643.
  3. Fixation of Chemical: Treated wood shall not be shipped from treatment plant until fixation of the preservative has occurred in the wood.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT TREATMENT

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Framing for raised platforms.
  - 2. Concealed blocking.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesives:
  - 1. General: Provide adhesives approved which are Low-VOC or non-VOC, non-flammable, water-proof after cured, odor free.
  - 2. Adhesive for lamination and fabrication of wood and plywood items: Exterior adhesives containing no urea formaldehydes, having a VOC limit of 70 g/L.
  - 3. Adhesive for subfloors and underlayment: High strength, waterproof and non-freezing adhesive complying with AFG-01 "Frozen Lumber Test" and ASTM 3498, and having a VOC limit of 50 g/L.
- B. Nails (interior and exterior): Galvanized common nails, of size and type to suit application and as required by state and local building codes.
- C. Screws:
  - 1. Screws for interior applications: Flat head electroplated-galvanized wood screws of the appropriate sizes.
  - 2. Screws for exterior applications:
    - a. For ACQ pressure preservative treated wood: Flat head type 304 or 316 stainless steel only, wood screws, of the appropriate sizes. Aluminum, galvanized steel, and coated metal fasteners are prohibited.

- b. For general application (non-pressure preservative treated wood): Flat head hard aluminum, or stainless steel, wood screws, of the appropriate sizes.
- D. Anchor bolts, expansion bolts and lag screws: Hot-dipped galvanized steel, of the following types:
- 1. For lumber having actual thickness of 1-1/2 inches or greater to masonry and concrete: Anchor bolts or expansion bolts, as most applicable for the specific receiving surface material, 3/8-inch minimum diameter, spaced as shown on drawings, and staggered as far as practicable. Countersink all bolt heads, and provide head washers of matching material.
  - 2. For lumber having actual thickness of greater than 7/8-inch but less than 1-1/2 inches to masonry and concrete: Anchor bolts or expansion bolts, as most applicable for the specific receiving surface material, at least 1/4-inch diameter of the most appropriate lengths for the specific application, spaced as shown, and staggered as far as practicable. Countersink all bolt heads, and provide head washers of matching material.
  - 3. For lumber having actual thickness of 7/8-inch and less: Anchor bolts or expansion bolts, at least 1/4-inch in diameter; or screws, of the most appropriate sizes; in lengths most suitable for the specific application, countersunk, spaced, and staggered.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. All materials shall be inspected before use, with all checked, split and otherwise deficient stock rejected, or used only for miscellaneous blocking, furring or other incidental use. The Contractor shall be responsible for replacing all lumber which, due to warpage, twist, splitting, or checking, results in unsatisfactory work. Such replacement shall be required at any time, whether before or after application of finish material under other Sections.
- B. Verify exact locations of handrail brackets, toilet accessories, door stops and similar items with Architect prior to installation of blocking for accessories.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Closely coordinate the installation of the rough carpentry work with the work of other trades responsible for the installation of interfacing or overlaying materials, so as not to delay the work of the related trades.
- B. Erect all rough carpentry work plumb, level, and true with tight, close fitting joints, securely attached and braced to surrounding construction, all in a first class workmanlike manner. Counterbore for bolt heads, nuts, and washers where required to avoid interference with other materials. Bear complete responsibility for structural integrity, connections, and anchorage of all rough carpentry work

- C. Make provisions for erection loads, and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain structure safe, plumb, and in true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- D. Use as long lengths as practicable for wood nailers, blockings, and curbs, to minimize number of joints, and attach the members with the types, and spacing, of fasteners specified herein.
- E. Install blocking, grounds and furring, as required for proper attachment of the work of other trades, in accordance with the requirements provided by the respective related trades.
  - 1. Spacing for furring and strapping shall not exceed 16 inches on center.
- F. Field cuts of fire retardant treated lumber: Do not rip or mill fire retardant treated lumber. Only end cuts, drilling holes and joining cuts are permitted.
- G. Field cuts of ACQ pressure-treated lumber: Apply solution of copper naphthenate containing a minimum of 2 percent metallic copper in-solution, in accordance with AWWA standard M4. Brush liberally all cuts and holes.
- H. Install concealed from view plywood with specified fasteners spaced not more than 10 inches on centers.
- I. Install fire-treated plywood backer boards with counter-sunk galvanized fasteners, of specified sizes, spaced not more than 12 inches on centers.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT BACKBOARDS

- A. Provide panel mounting backboards for HVAC, Fire Prevention, Electrical and telephone/data equipment. Fabricate panels using fire-retardant treated 3/4 inch thick panels mounted to fire-retardant treated 2 by 4's. Provide a nominal space of 3-1/2 inches behind panels to permit wiring.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Daily clean work areas by sweeping and disposing of scraps and sawdust.
- B. Upon completion of the work of this Section in any given area, remove tools, equipment and all rubbish and debris from the work area; leave area in broom-clean condition.

### 3.5 SCHEDULES

- A. Wood treatment schedule:
  - 1. Pressure preservative treat all concealed or exposed-to-view:
    - a. Lumber and plywood which comes in contact with concrete, masonry, or earth.

- b. Lumber and plywood nailers, blocking and curbing directly related to roofing, flashing, skylights, roof hatches, and roof accessories.
  - c. Lumber and plywood rough-bucks, blocking and nailers directly related to windows, curtainwall and storefront systems.
2. Fire retardant treat all equipment backer boards, additionally provide fire retardant treated lumber and plywood where indicated or noted on Drawings.
- B. Wood blocking schedule: The following schedule lists common items for which blocking is required and may not be indicated on the Drawings. It is not the intention of this schedule to list all conditions requiring blocking or limit the extent of blocking required for completion of the Work; provide all wood blocking, edgings, nailers, required for receipt of various finishes and surfacing materials. Securely anchor wood blocking and run continuous between framing.
1. Blocking sizes indicated below are minimum sizes for conditions which not otherwise sized or indicated on Drawings. In case of conflict, sizes identified on Drawings govern.

<b>Items</b>	<b>Nominal size of blocking with fastener notes</b>
Door Frames;	2 by 4 inch, full height of wall framing
Door Frames, having openings exceeding 4 feet in width;	2 by 4 inch, full height of wall framing
Door frames, cross corridors;	2 by 4 inch.
Door stops, wall mounted;	1 by 3 inch.
Grab bars;	2 by 6 inch, with 1/4 " dia. Toggle bolts.
Lavatories;	3/4 inch plywood extending full height from floor to top of wall framing. Install lavatories with 1/4 inch dia. toggle bolts
Mirrors, framed;	2 by 4 inch
Shower rods;	2 by 4 inch
Soap dispensers, wall mounted;	1 by 3 inch
Paper towel dispensers, waste receptacles, feminine napkin dispensers;	1 by 3 inch.
Toilet paper dispensers;	2 by 4 inch
Towel bars;	2 by 6 inch, 1/4 inch diameter toggle bolts
Wall mounted railings;	2 by 8 inch
Window treatment (shades, blinds and curtains):	2 by 4 inch
Products bracketed to walls, (including sinks, cabinets and similar products):	3/4 inch plywood extending full height from floor to top of wall framing. Install brackets with 1/4 inch dia. toggle bolts

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 06 2023 INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Misc. Interior trim.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry; for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.
- B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.
- D. Samples for Verification:

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC's Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
- B. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- C. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.
- D. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
- E. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.

## 2.2 INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Lumber Trim for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish):
  - 1. Species and Grade:
    - a. Eastern white pine; NeLMA or NLGA Finish or 1 Common.
    - b. Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; NLGA or WWPA 2 Common (Sterling).

- c. Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; NeLMA, NLGA, or WWPA Finish or 1 Common (Colonial).
  - d. White woods; WWPA 1 Common.
  - e. Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA Superior or C & Btr finish.
  - f. Spruce-pine-fir; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA 1 Common.
2. Maximum Moisture Content for Softwoods: 19 with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less.
  3. Maximum Moisture Content for Hardwoods: 13 percent.
  4. Finger Jointing: Allowed.
  5. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth) Optional Material: Primed MDF of same actual dimensions as lumber indicated may be used in lieu of lumber.
- B. Moldings for Opaque Finish (Painted Finish): Made to patterns included in MMPA's "WM/Series Softwood Moulding Patterns."
1. Softwood Moldings: MMPA WM 4, P grade.
    - a. Species: Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine.
    - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less.
  2. Hardwood Moldings: MMPA WM 4, P-grade.
    - a. Species: Aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, tupelo, or yellow poplar.
    - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  3. Finger Jointing: Allowed.
  4. Optional Material: Primed MDF.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.
- B. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.
- C. Installation Adhesive for Foam-Plastic Moldings: Product recommended for indicated use by foam-plastic molding manufacturer.
- D. Paneling Adhesive: Comply with paneling manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives.
- E. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation, complying with ASTM D3498, that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturer.



## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members, except those with ends exposed in finished work:
  - 1. Interior standing and running trim, except shoe and crown molds.
  - 2. Wood-board paneling.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound; warped; improperly treated or finished; inadequately seasoned; too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements; or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
  - 2. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.

5. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.
  1. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.
- B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

### **3.5 CLEANING**

- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semi exposed surfaces.
- B. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes if any.

### **3.6 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 06 4116 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CASEWORK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Plastic Laminate-clad cabinets
  - 2. Plastic-laminate-clad custom banquette
  - 3. Plastic-laminate-clad custom lockers.
  - 4. Plastic-laminate-clad furnishings
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry; for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.
- B. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified in Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware to manufacturer of architectural cabinets; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show large-scale details.

3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
  4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate architectural cabinets.
  5. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's or manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following:
1. Plastic Laminates: 8 by 10 inches, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required.
    - a. Provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material applied to one edge.
  2. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials, from ICC-ES.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
  1. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Licensed participant in WI's Certified Compliance Program.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver casework until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install items until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Field Measurements: Where items are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- D. Established Dimensions: Where items are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  1. Provide labels and certificates from AWI certification program indicating that woodwork and installation complies with requirements of grades specified.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.

- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
  - 1. Reveal Dimension: 1/8 inch.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: ISO 4586-3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Formica Corporation.
    - b. Laminart LLC.
    - c. Wilsonart LLC.
- F. Exposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Plastic-Laminate Grade: HGS VGS.
  - 2. Edges: Grade HGS, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
  - 3. Pattern Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panelsVertically for drawer fronts.
- G. Semiexposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4586-3.
    - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC tape, 0.018-inch minimum thickness.
    - b. Edges of Thermally Fused Laminate Panel Shelves: PVC or polyester edge banding.
    - c. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4586-3, grade to match exposed surface.
  - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermally fused laminate panels with PVC or polyester edge banding.
  - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Thermally fused laminate panels.
- H. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.
- I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4583-3, grade to match exposed surface.
- J. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
  - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
- K. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

1. Match Architect's sample.

## 2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD LOCKERS AND FURNISHINGS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of architectural plastic-laminate cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- B. Grade: Custom.
- C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Panolam Industries International, Inc.
    - b. Wilsonart International; Div. of Wilsonart Engineered Surfaces.
    - c. Substitutions: See Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures."

## 2.3 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
  2. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of ISO 4586.

## 2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Cabinet Hardware: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware."
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, Provide products by available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Accuride International Inc.
    - b. CompX International, Inc.



- c. Grass America.
  - d. Hardware Resources.
  - e. Hettich America L.P.
  - f. Julius Blum & Co., Inc.
  - g. Knappe & Vogt Manufacturing Company.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 100 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal 4 inches long, 5/16 inch in diameter.
- D. Catches: Push-in magnetic catches, ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03131.
- E. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; two-pin plastic with shelf hold-down clip.
- F. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
- 1. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mount.
    - a. Type: Full extension.
    - b. Material: Zinc-plated ball bearing slides.
    - c. Motion Feature: Soft close dampener.
  - 2. General-purpose drawers more than 3 inches high, but not more than 6 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide 75 lb load capacity.
  - 3. File drawers more than 6 inches high or more than 24 inches wide, provide 100 lb load capacity.
- G. Door Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- H. Drawer Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- I. Door and Drawer Silencers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- J. Grommets for Cable Passage: 1-1/4-inch OD, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
- 1. Color: Black.
- K. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for ANSI/BHMA finish number indicated.
- 1. Satin Stainless Steel: ANSI/BHMA 630.
- L. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Type I, waterproof type as selected by fabricator to comply with requirements.
  - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.
- D. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; galvanized or chrome plated finish in concealed locations and stainless steel, or chrome plated finish in exposed locations.
- E. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contact cement.
  - 1. Adhesive Type recommended by AWI/AWMAC to suit application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

### 3.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times architectural cabinet fabrication will be complete.
  - 2. Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.

- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
- D. Fabricate banquettes to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- E. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
  - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips or No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish or toggle bolts through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish].

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections: Provide inspection of installed Work through AWI's Quality Certification Program certifying that woodwork, including installation, complies with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards for the specified grade.
  - 1. Inspection entity shall prepare and submit report of inspection.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective items, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace casework. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 07 7200 ROOF HATCHES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof hatches.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
  - 2. Section 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2010.
- B. ASTM A792/A792M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process; 2010.
- C. FMP7825 - Approval Guide; Factory Mutual Research Corporation; current edition.
- D. UL (BMD) - Building Materials Directory; current edition.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof hatch with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on roof hatch.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 4. Installation methods.
  - 5. Maintenance requirements.
- B. Samples: For color of size to adequately show color.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Size and location of roof hatch.
  - 2. Method of attaching roof hatch to roof or building structure.
  - 3. Required clearances.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof hatch shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings

### 2.2 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Basis of Design: Babcock-Davis - Thermalax
- B. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing, and weathertight perimeter gasketing, straight sides and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ACUDOR Products, Inc.
    - b. BILCO Company (The).
    - c. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products, a division of Colony Heating.
    - d. Dur-Red Products.
    - e. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
- C. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 30 by 36 inches for ladder access.
- D. Loads: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal uplift load.
- E. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
  - 1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
  - 2. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
  - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Construction:
  - 1. Insulation: 2-inch-thick, polyisocyanurate board.
    - a. R-Value: according to ASTM C1363.
  - 2. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
  - 3. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.



4. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, galvanized steel spring latch with turn handles, galvanized steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof hatch.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Roof-Hatch Installation: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, in manner that maintains roofing weather integrity.
  1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
  2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
  3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING**

- A. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 09 9100 – Painting and Staining.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 07 7210 ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment supports.
  - 2. Pipe and duct supports.
  - 3. Pipe portals.
  - 4. Preformed flashing sleeves.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
  - 2. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
  - 3. Section 07 7100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured fasciae, copings, gravel stops, gutters and downspouts, and counterflashing.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
  1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
  2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
  3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
  4. Required clearances.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

- B. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings

## 2.2 PIPE PORTALS

- A. Curb-Mounted Pipe Portal: Insulated roof-curb units with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom; with weathertight curb cover with single or multiple collared openings and pressure-sealed conically shaped EPDM protective rubber caps sized for piping indicated, with stainless steel snaplock swivel clamps.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Portals Plus; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - b. Roof Products and Systems (RPS); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Flashing Pipe Portal: Formed aluminum membrane-mounting flashing flange and sleeve with collared opening and pressure-sealed conically shaped EPDM protective rubber cap sized for piping indicated, with stainless steel snaplock swivel clamps.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Portals Plus; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

## 2.3 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

- A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches high, with removable metal hood and slotted metal collar.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products, a division of Colony Heating.
    - b. Menzies Metal Products.
    - c. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  - 2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inchthick.
  - 3. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings
  - 4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products, a division of Colony Heating.
    - b. Menzies Metal Products.

- c. Milcor; Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  - d. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
2. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
  3. Height: 7 inches.
  4. Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
  5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.4 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation.
  1. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.
  2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
  3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Pre-painted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight.
  4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: After cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
  5. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A792/A792M, AZ50 coated.
  1. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
  2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Pre-painted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight.
  3. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: After cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
  4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

- C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
  - 1. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
  - 2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight.
  - 3. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- D. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B221, manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used; otherwise mill finished.
- E. Stainless Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- F. Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube.
- H. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- I. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- E. Underlayment:

1. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
  2. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil-thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D4397.
  3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
  4. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
- F. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
  2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  3. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- G. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- H. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- I. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- J. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
  - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
- D. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
- E. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve and Flashing Pipe Portal Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.



### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 09 9100 – Painting and Staining.
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 07 7220 SAFETY POSTS FOR LADDERS USED WITH ROOF HATCHES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Furnishing and installing safety post for fixed ladders in roof hatches.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications for metal vertical ladders for access to roof hatches.
  2. Section 07 6200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A792/A792M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process; 2010.
- B. FMP7825 - Approval Guide; Factory Mutual Research Corporation; current edition.
- C. UL (BMD) - Building Materials Directory; current edition.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on safety posts for use with ladders..
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  4. Installation methods.
  5. Maintenance requirements.
- B. Samples: For color of size to adequately show color.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard warranty. All safety Posts shall be free from manufacturing defects in materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years from the date of shipment. Should a product fail to function in normal use within this period, manufacturer shall furnish a new part at no charge.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis of Design: Babcock-Davis  
9300 73<sup>rd</sup> Avenue North  
Brooklyn Park, MN 55428  
Toll Free Hotline: 888.412.3726  
Toll Free Fax: 888.312.3726
- B. General Performance: Roof hatch shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- C. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings

### 2.2 SAFETY POST FOR FIXED LADDERS

- A. Basis of Design: Babcock-Davis:
- B. Safety Post, Steel, Yellow Powder Coat
  1. Performance Requirements: Fabricate safety post to comply with OSHA 1910.27 for fixed ladders. Must support 200 pound load.
  2. Post: 1 1/2" x 1 1/2" Steel square tubing- high strength. A pull up loop shall be provided at the upper end of the post to facilitate raising the post.
  3. Finish: Powder coat paint, Safety Yellow.
  4. Spring assist: Stainless steel balancing spring mechanism shall be provided to provide smooth, easy, controlled operation when raising and lowering the safety post.
  5. Hardware: All mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.

6. Acceptable Product Model: SPY

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that preparation and affected dimensions are acceptable and will not disrupt other trades.
- B. Verify that the ladder rungs are dry, clean and free of foreign matter..
- C. Verify tolerances and correct improper conditions.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- E. Advise installers of details relating to safety post locations of supports, and anchoring methods.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for installing safety post.
- B. The manufacturer shall furnish fasteners necessary for installing ladder safety post on ladder rungs, reinforcing if hollow. Secure rigidly in place.
  - 1. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
  - 2. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING**

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces and remove unused product and debris form site.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

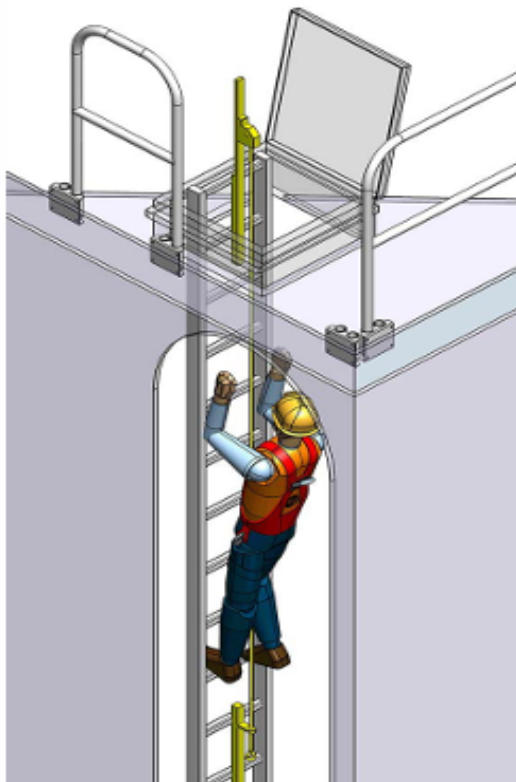
SECTION 07 7222  
LADDER CABLE FALL ARREST SYSTEM



# Ladder Cable Fall Arrest for Roof Hatch Ladder

with Telescoping Extension/Post

## PRODUCT LITERATURE



With CAI Safety's **Ladder Cable Fall Arrest System w/ Telescoping Extension for Roof Hatch Ladders**, you have safety and security when climbing fixed ladders and transitioning to the upper level through the roof hatch. The design allows the cable system to be installed on the ladder, and being able to extend the telescoping post above the roof hatch while remaining attached to this post.

This system is ideal for climbing long indoor and outdoor ladders that reach up to a roof hatch to safely climb out through the hatch.

[LINK TO INFO & PRICING](#)

## Features & Benefits

- Designed to meet the requirements of the new ANSI Z359.16 standard, along with OSHA 1910.140 and 1926.502
- Ladder Detachable Cable Trolley/Sleeve included with system.
- Galvanized Steel and Stainless Steel system options.
- Telescoping Single Point anchor extends 30".
- Ladder Detachable Cable Sleeve included with the system.
- Re-engineered to simplify and speed up the installation process.
- Light – weighs less than our previous systems.
- 100% tie-off capability: Integrated fall arrest-rated anchor point on top bracket rated to 3,600 lbs.
- Flexible: Mounting brackets can be used on a variety of fixed ladder styles that may consist of different rung spacing and shapes
- Ideal for applications requiring egress off of ladder onto a platform
- Ordering is easy – top and bottom brackets sold together as a system in a single SKU.
- We offer other [Ladder Fall Arrest Systems](#) with rigid tracks and cables to suit your application.



This system is only designed to be used if you have an existing fixed ladder that leads up to a roof hatch. For other ladder cable systems, that are non-roof hatch compliant, please see our [Ladder Fall Arrest Systems](#)

## System Components

**Vertical Cable Lifeline** – The cable will be a stranded galvanized steel cable that can be fitted on straight and curved ladders. User remains secured to the cable system for the entire length of the ladder.

**Telescoping Extension/Pole** – The telescoping pole extends three feet above the highest ladder rung. This allows the user to safely access or exit the hatch by attaching to the fall arrest anchor (self-retracting lifeline) on top of the telescoping post. The telescoping single point anchor extends 30".

**Cable Trolley/Sleeve (included with system)** – The trolley is designed to follow the user along the lifeline while ascending or descending and instantly lock in the event of a fall.

*(For an additional user, please add (1) extra cable trolley to your order)*

**Buy Individually** →

**Anchor Point** – The anchor point at the very top of the system allows additional fall protection with a self-retracting lifeline, to transition to a side/upper level platform, mezzanine, or rooftop.

**Cable Guides** – A cable guide provides stability to the vertical cable lifeline installed on the ladder. Cable guides have already been included with the system based on the length of your ladder.

*(1) Cable Guide must be installed per 30ft. of cable as per the manufacturer's requirements.*

**Full Body Harness (CSS-1102010) [OPTIONAL]** – Delta harnesses are as tough as the guys who wear them. They feature coated, corrosion-resistant hardware, water-repellant and abrasion-resistant webbing and a build quality that is second to none. **[REQUIRED FOR THIS SYSTEM TO FUNCTION IF YOU DON'T ALREADY OWN ONE]**

**Buy Individually** →

### System Components Include:

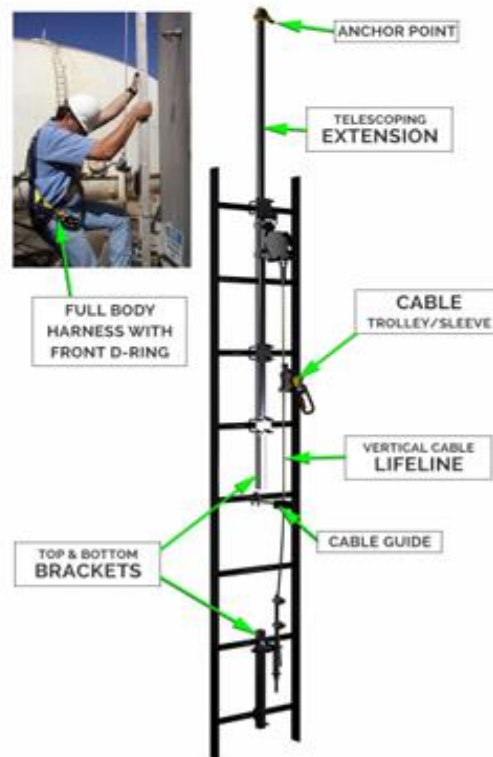
- Top & Bottom bracket for Climb Extension with Anchor Point
- Galvanized 3/8" (9.5mm) Cable or Stainless Steel 3/8" (9.5mm)
- Cable Guides
- Cable Trolley/Sleeve

**Finishes:** Galvanized Steel Cable Lifeline / Stainless Steel Cable Lifeline

**Optional Accessories:** Construction Style Positioning Harness, Back & Side D-Rings

**Compliance:** Meets OSHA 1910.140 and 1926.502, ANSI Z359.16 standard, CSA Z259.2.5, and CE (EN353-1:2014+A1:2017) requirements.

**Rated for:** 1 to 4 Users



*(click pic to enlarge)*



## System Guidelines

Please follow the following **guidelines** to ensure you use this system as per the manufacturer's instructions:

- ❖ **Ladder Structure:** Ladder structure must be certified by a qualified person to support 2700 lbs.
- ❖ **Capacity:** One person with a combined weight (clothing, tools, etc.) of no more than 310 lbs. (140 kg) 1 per person.
- ❖ **Self-retracting Lifeline (SRL) Maximum Arresting Force:** 1,350 lbs. (6 kN)
- ❖ **Telescoping Pole Anchor:** The telescoping pole will extend single point anchor to 30" (0.76m). The pole serves as a single point anchor for a single user attachment. Minimum breaking strength is 3,600 lbs. (16kN). Conforms to OSHA 1926.502 and 1910.140.
- ❖ **Trolley/Sleeve:** Used as a Sleeve in vertical systems. Allows the user to move freely up and down the system while maintaining attachment. Use only with supplied carabiner or snap hook.
- ❖ **Full-body Harness:** Requires a front D-Ring.
- ❖ **Standards/Approvals:** OSHA 1926.1053, 1910.29, ANSI Z359.16, CSA Z259.2.5



**LADDER CABLE FALL ARREST SYSTEM WILL FIT THE FOLLOWING RUNG  
TYPES AND SPACING:**



**Rung spacing**  
9 in.-12.25 in. (200 mm-310 mm)



**Cylindrical rung**  
0.75 in.-1.6 in. (19 mm-40 mm) diameter



**Square rung**  
0.75 in.-1.6 in. (19 mm-40 mm)



**Diamond rung**  
0.75 in.-1.6 in. (19 mm-40 mm) height



**Angle iron**  
0.75 in.-1.6 in. (19 mm-40 mm) leg height

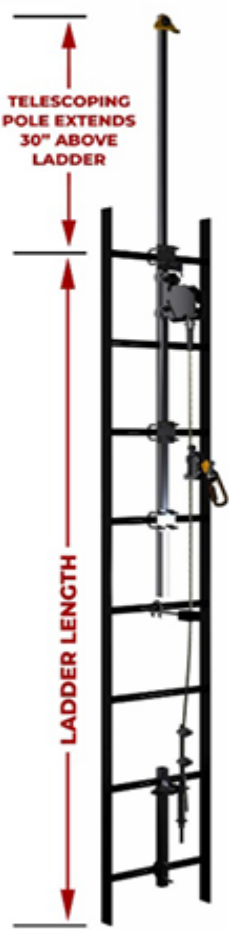


**Rectangular rung**  
0.75 in.-1.6 in. (19 mm-40 mm) height,  
0.75 in.-1.9 in. (19 mm-48 mm) width



## Ladder Length vs System Length

To help you make the right choices, we have compiled below a table to show you the options you choose versus the system length that you actually receive. You can calculate options and pricing at this link.

LADDER LENGTH (what you choose)	SYSTEM LENGTH (what you get)	REFERENCE PIC
12 ft. or less	15 ft. (4.5 m)	 <p>TELESCOPING POLE EXTENDS 30" ABOVE LADDER</p> <p>LADDER LENGTH</p> <p>(click pic to enlarge)</p>
13 ft. to 17 ft.	20 ft. (6 m)	
18 ft. to 27 ft.	30 ft. (9.1 m)	
28 ft. to 37 ft.	40 ft. (12.2 m)	
38 ft. to 47 ft.	50 ft. (15.2 m)	
48 ft. to 57 ft.	60 ft. (18.3 m)	
58 ft. to 67 ft.	70 ft. (21.3 m)	
68 ft. to 77 ft.	80 ft. (24.4 m)	
78 ft. to 87 ft.	90 ft. (27.4 m)	
88 ft. to 97 ft.	100 ft. (30.5 m)	
98 ft. to 107 ft.	110 ft. (33.5 m)	
108 ft. to 117 ft.	120 ft. (36.6 m)	
118 ft. to 127 ft.	130 ft. (39.6 m)	
128 ft. to 137 ft.	140 ft. (42.7 m)	
138 ft. to 147 ft.	150 ft. (45.7 m)	

## Self-retracting Lifeline/Device (SRL/SRD)



### Nano-Lok 6 ft. (Class A & B) Single-leg Self-Retracting Lifelines

**Size/Length:** 6ft. (1.8m)

**SKU:** CSS-3100526

Nano-Lok™ self-retracting lifelines are ergonomically designed for ease of use and is ideal for direct connection to most harnesses. The extremely compact and lightweight design is virtually unnoticeable on your back, staying out of the worker's way and making it ideal as a lanyard replacement.

*Effective August 1, 2023, complies with the new ANSI/ASSP Z359.14-2021 standard with conformance to 29 CFR OSHA 1926.502 & OSHA 1910.140*

**Purchase Individually** →

#### FEATURES & BENEFITS

- Lightest ANSI certified personal SRL that allows for knee level tie-off
- Smart activating brake system combines ANSI Class A & B to provide fall clearance as low as 4 ft.- up to 13 ft. less than lanyards
- Lightweight speed connect system reduces connect and disconnect time by up to 60%
- Durable nitrile rubber energy absorber cover designed to last 4 times longer
- Reduced energy absorber size is more user friendly and convenient
- 6 ft. (1.8m) 3/4" (19mm) Dyneema® fiber and polyester web lifeline
- 310 lbs. capacity, 420 lbs. capacity shoulder height and higher
- Connected Safety ID (CSID) equipped

## Full-body Harness



### Delta Cross-Over Style Climbing Harness, Front & Back D-rings

**Size:** Universal

**SKU:** CSS-1102010

Delta harnesses are as tough as the guys who wear them. They feature coated, corrosion-resistant hardware, water-repellant and abrasion-resistant webbing and a build quality that is second to none. A patented triangular design gives Delta harnesses a shape of their own, so you can don them quickly and easily.

[Purchase Individually](#) →

#### FEATURES & BENEFITS

- No-tangle design
- Stand-up back D-ring
- Front D-ring
- Pass-thru buckle leg straps
- Repel™ webbing
- Built-in lanyard keepers
- Revolver™ vertical torso adjusters
- Impact Indicator
- Protected labels, equipped with i-Safe™



**\*\*CAUTION WARNING\*\*** This fall protection system is designed to ensure your safety when used correctly. To prevent serious injury or death, it is imperative that you strictly adhere to the manufacturer's instructions. Only operate this system if you have received proper training. In accordance with OSHA regulations, it is mandatory to involve a Qualified Person for the design and installation supervision of all fall arrest and restraint systems, including the product highlighted on this page. To access detailed instructions, please download the system manuals from the 'Downloads' tab on each product page. For any inquiries or clarifications, feel free to **contact us**. Your safety is our top priority!

## Need a Quote?

By providing some basic information we can provide you with a custom proposal. Pictures and sketches are very helpful and if you prefer to speak with a fall protection expert just call or send us an e-mail. **Fill out our [Request a Quote](#) form to send us your information.**



**Phone:** (951) 465-7386

**Website:** <https://caisafety.com>

**Email:** [webstore@caisafety.com](mailto:webstore@caisafety.com)



END OF SECTIO

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 07 7233 SAFETY RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
- B. Accessory Products for Roof Top Products
  - a. Safety Railings

#### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. Section 05 5000 – Metal Fabrications for ladders.
- B. Section 07 7200 - Roof Hatches.
- C. Section 07 7220 - Safety Posts for Ladders Used with Roof Hatches

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate configuration and dimension of components, adjacent construction, required clearances and tolerances, and other affected Work.
- B. General: Show connections of units and hardware to other Work. Include schedules showing location of each type and size of unit.
- C. Product Data: Manufacturer's technical data for each type of hatch assembly, including setting drawings, templates, finish requirements, and details of anchorage devices.
- A. Contract Closeout Submittals
  - 1. Installation, Operating & Maintenance manuals



## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer/Installer: Company specializing in manufacturing and installation of components specified in this Section with minimum of 5 years documented experience.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site ready use.
- B. Exercise proper care in handling of Work so as not to disrupt finished surfaces.
- C. Store materials under cover in a dry and clean location off the ground.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard 5 year warranty. All safety railings shall be free from manufacturing defects in materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years from the date of shipment. Should a product fail to function in normal use within this period, manufacturer shall furnish a replacement or new part at manufacturers' discretion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

Basis of Design: Babcock-Davis  
9300 73rd Ave N.  
Brooklyn Park, MN 55428  
PH: 888-412-3726  
[www.BabcockDavis.com](http://www.BabcockDavis.com)

### 2.2 SAFETY RAILINGS

- A. Safety Railing System: Model SRC Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a

complete installation; attached to roof hatch and complying with OSHA 29 CFR 1910.29 & 29 CFR 1910.28 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
2. Rails:
  - a. Aluminum pipe, 1-1/4 inch, outside diameter, schedule 40 6061 T6 alloy pipe.
  - b. Fittings: Cast aluminum 5052-H32 alloy with set screw hold.
  - c. Mounting Brackets: 3/16 inch steel, zinc plated with nut backing plate.
  - d. Exit: Self-closing gate, 1-1/4 inch aluminum self-closing with coil spring.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 ADJUSTING**

Adjust movable parts for smooth operation.

Operational Units: Test-operate units with operable components. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware. Adjust for proper operation.

### **3.2 CLEANING**

Clean exposed surfaces per manufacturer's written instructions. Touch up damaged metal coatings.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 07 8413 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
  - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
  - 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 07 2100 - Thermal Insulation
  - 2. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants
  - 3. Section 09 2900 - Gypsum Board
  - 4. Mechanical: Requirements for penetrations through fire rated construction.
  - 5. Electrical: Requirements for penetrations through fire rated construction.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.

- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for penetration firestopping.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetration firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by the following:
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
      - 2) Intertek ETL SEMKO in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
      - 3) FM Global in its "Building Materials Approval Guide."
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.

- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.
- C. Notify Owner's testing agency at least seven days in advance of penetration firestopping installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
  - 2. Grace Construction Products.
  - 3. Hilti, Inc.
  - 4. Nelson Firestop Products.
  - 5. NUCO Inc.
  - 6. Rector Seal Corporation.
  - 7. Specified Technologies Inc.
  - 8. 3M Fire Protection Products.
  - 9. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
  - 10. USG Corporation.
  - 11. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

### 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Fillers for sealants.
  - 2. Temporary forming materials.
  - 3. Substrate primers.

4. Collars.
5. Steel sleeves.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
  1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and sloped surfaces, unless indicated firestopping limits use of nonsag grade for both opening conditions.

## 2.4 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing

time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Install firestop and fire safing materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations to provide F and T ratings as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Install firestop materials in accordance with UL Fire Resistance Directory.
  - 3. Install firestop and fire safing materials with sufficient pressure to properly fill and seal openings, then tool or trowel exposed surfaces.
- B. Firestopping Materials:



1. Install primer and firestopping material in sufficient thickness, with required accessories to achieve rating, to uniform density and texture, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Install material at walls or partition openings which contain penetrating sleeves, piping, ductwork, conduit and other items requiring firestopping.
3. Consult with mechanical engineer, and damper manufacturer prior to installation of UL firestop systems that might hamper the performance of fire dampers as it pertains to duct work.
4. Remove dam material after firestopping material has cured or allow dam material to remain if required to maintain fire rating integrity or required by authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Do not conceal or enclose any firestopping materials until they have been examined and approved for use by the Project Manager and authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Fire Safing Materials:

1. Install fire safing in sufficient thickness, with retainer materials where shown or required to achieve fire rating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Do not conceal or enclose any fire safing materials until they have been examined and approved for use by the Project Manager and authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Fire Protection Board Materials:

1. Install fire protection board in proper type, size, and density, with adhesives, fasteners, and jacketing materials where shown or required to achieve fire rating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Do not conceal or enclose any fire protection board materials until they have been examined and approved for use by the Project Manager and authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  4. Date of installation.
  5. Manufacturer's name.
  6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.
- D. Examine sealed penetration areas to ensure proper installation before concealing or enclosing areas.
- E. Keep areas of work accessible until inspection by applicable code authorities.
- F. Inspection of through-penetration firestopping shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E 2174, "Standard Practice for On-Site Inspection of Installed Fire Stops".
- G. Perform under this section patching and repairing of firestopping caused by cutting or penetrating of existing firestop systems already installed by other trades.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage by material installation.
- B. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 07 9200 JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Contractor's attention is specifically directed, but not limited, to the following documents for additional requirements:
  - 1. The current version of the *Uniform General Conditions for Construction Contracts*, State of Texas, available on the web site of the Texas Facilities Commission.
  - 2. The University of Houston's Supplemental General Conditions and Special Conditions for Construction.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
  - 3. Latex joint sealants.
  - 4. Acoustical joint sealants.

#### 1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers all samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants. Use ASTM C 1087 manufacturer's standard test method to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates with and without primer. Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
  - 1. Arrange for tests to take place with sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
  - 2. Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Use alternate materials or modify installation procedure, or both, for sealants that fail to adhere to substrates.

3. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated. Sealant manufacturer's literature including written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate; technical data including tested physical and performance properties; and installation instructions.
  1. Include temperature ranges for storage and application of materials, and special cold-weather application requirements or limitations.
  2. SpecData sheet for substrate cleaner and substrate primer recommended by sealant manufacturer for specific substrate surface and conditions.
  3. Include Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for information only; safety restrictions are sole responsibility of Contractor.
- B. Samples: For each kind and color of joint sealant required include sealant manufacturer's color sample card, either printed or with thin sealant beads, showing range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  4. Joint-sealant color.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Preconstruction compatibility and adhesion test reports.
- C. Preconstruction field-adhesion test reports.
- D. Field-adhesion test reports.
- E. Warranties.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- B. Installer's Qualifications: Experienced firm that has successfully completed sealant work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project; that is approved, authorized, or licensed by sealant manufacturer to install sealant; and that is eligible to

receive sealant manufacturer's warranty. Must have successful installations of specified materials in local area in use for minimum of five years.

1. Employ foreman with minimum five years of experience as foreman on similar projects, to be on Site at all times during Work. Do not change foremen during the course of the Project except for reasons beyond the control of the Installer; inform Architect/Engineer in advance of any changes.
- C. Compatibility Tests: Include sealant and sealers or coatings that may come into contact with sealant following sealant installation.
- D. Mockups: Install ten feet of sealant in each type of joint to verify and set quality standards for materials and installation procedures, and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
  1. Include each type of backing material, sealant, primer and other related products.
  2. Mockups shall be accessible or located as indicated by Owner's Representative.
- E. Notify Owner's Representative and Architect/Engineer seven days in advance of date when mockups will be constructed.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which joint-sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period:
    - a. Weather joints, i.e., joints that if failure occurs, will allow water or air infiltration into the building interior: provide 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Cosmetic joints: provide 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
  2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- B. Low-Emitting Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Liquid-Applied Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied joint sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
1. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- E. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.

## 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Dowsil Corporation.
    - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated.
  2. Type: Single component (S).
  3. Grade: nonsag (NS).
  4. Class: 50.
  5. Uses Related to Exposure: Traffic (T) Nontraffic (NT).

## 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. BASF Building Systems.
  - b. Sika Corporation; Construction Products Division.
  - c. Tremco Incorporated.
2. Type: Single component (S) or multicomponent (M).
  3. Grade: Pourable (P) or nonsag (NS).
  4. Class: 25.
  5. Uses Related to Exposure: Traffic (T).

## 2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.
    - c. Pecora Corporation.
    - d. ITW Polymers Sealants North America.
    - e. Tremco Incorporated.

## 2.5 BUTYL JOINT SEALANT

- A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM 1311.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Sika Corp
    - b. Pecora Corporation

## 2.6 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation.
    - b. USG Corporation.



## 2.7 JOINT SEALANT BACKING

- A. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), Type O (open-cell material), Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- B. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
    - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
  - a. Metal.
  - b. Glass.
  - c. Porcelain enamel.
  - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- B. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- C. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.

2. Install sealant slightly below surface.
  3. Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool joint with slightly concave surface, compressing sealant into joint to form smooth, uniform sealant bead; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  4. Do not use tooling agent.
  5. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Acoustical Sealant Installation: Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.
- G. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
    - b. Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.
  2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.4 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints in brick pavers.
    - b. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - c. Joints between plant-precaster architectural concrete paving units.
    - d. Joints in stone paving units, including steps.
    - e. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - f. Joints between different materials listed above.

- g. Other joints as indicated.
    - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone (Single Component, Pourable, Traffic Grade, Neutral Curing).
  - B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
    - 1. Joint Locations:
      - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
      - b. Joints between plant-precaster architectural concrete units.
      - c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
      - d. Joints in dimension stone cladding.
      - e. Joints in glass unit masonry assemblies.
      - f. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
      - g. Joints between metal panels.
      - h. Joints between different materials listed above.
      - i. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors windows and louvers.
      - j. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
      - k. Other joints as indicated.
    - 2. Joint Sealant: Silicone (Single Component, Non-Sag, Neutral Curing, Class 50).
  - C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
    - 1. Joint Locations:
      - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
      - b. Control and expansion joints in stone flooring.
      - c. Control and expansion joints in brick flooring.
      - d. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
      - e. Other joints as indicated.
    - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane (Multicomponent, Non-Sag, Traffic Grade, Class 25).
  - D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
    - 1. Joint Locations:
      - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
      - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
      - c. Tile control and expansion joints.
      - d. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry concrete walls and partitions.
      - e. Joints on underside of plant-precaster structural concrete beams and planks.
      - f. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors windows and elevator entrances.
      - g. Other joints as indicated.

2. Joint Sealant: Latex (Single Component, Non-Sag).
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Sealant Location:
    - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
  2. Joint Sealant: Silicone (Mildew Resistant, Single Component, Acid Curing)
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior acoustical joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Location:
    - a. Acoustical joints where indicated.
    - b. Other joints as indicated.
  2. Joint Sealant: Acoustical (Single Component, Non-Sag).

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. As sealant Work progresses, clean off excess sealant or sealant smears by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and manufacturers of products in which joints occur. Exercise care to avoid scratching or damage to surfaces.
- B. At the end of each workday, clean Site and Work areas and place rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials in appropriate containers.
- C. After completing sealant Work:
  1. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during sealant Work.
  2. Clean up debris and surplus materials and remove from Site.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect sealant during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage, so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 08 1213 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior standard steel frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 1416 - Flush Wood Doors
  - 2. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Interior standard steel frames.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each frame type.
  - 2. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.

3. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  4. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  5. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
  6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  7. Details of accessories.
  8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For hollow-metal frames with factory-applied color finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification:
1. Finishes: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than 3 by 5 inches.
  2. Fabrication: Prepare Samples approximately 12 by 12 inches to demonstrate compliance with requirements for quality of materials and construction. Show profile, corner joint, floor and wall anchors, and silencers.
- F. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated hollow-metal frame assembly for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- B. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire-rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Airtec Corporation.
  2. Apex Industries, Inc.
  3. BARON Metal Industries, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY of Canada, Ltd.; ASSA ABLOY.
  4. Ceco Door; AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY.
  5. Concept Frames, AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY Group.
  6. Custom Metal Products.
  7. DCI Hollow Metal on Demand.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
  2. Oversize Fire-Rated Frames: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that frames comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated assemblies except for size.
- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.

### 2.3 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Interior Standard Steel Frames: SDI A250.8. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
1. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
  2. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
  3. Construction: Knocked down.
  4. Exposed Finish: Prime.



- C. Exterior Standard Steel Frames: SDI A250.8. [At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings] <Insert locations>
  - 1. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
  - 2. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
  - 3. Construction: Knocked down.
  - 4. Exposed Finish: Prime.

## 2.4 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
  - 2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
  - 3. Post-installed Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.
- D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M.

- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
  - 1. Sidelite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding, or by rigid mechanical anchors.
  - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

## 2.7 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
  - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap frames to receive non templated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions. Comply with SDI A250.11.
- B. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
  - 1. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
  - 2. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
- C. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
- D. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- E. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
  - 1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - 2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - 3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - 4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- F. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND TOUCHUP

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 08 1216 ALUMINUM FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior aluminum frames with butt-glass panels.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Interior aluminum doors, door frames, and glazing frames.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: For aluminum frames:
  - 1. Include elevations, sections, and installation details for each wall-opening condition.
  - 2. Include details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Include locations of reinforcements and preparations for hardware.
  - 4. Include details of anchorages, joints, field splices, connections, and accessories.
  - 5. Include details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.
  - 1. Include Samples of seals, gaskets, and accessories involving color selection.
- F. Samples for Verification: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Framing Member and Finish: 12 inches long. Include trim.
  - 2. Corner Fabrication and Finish: 12-by-12-inch-long, full-size window corner, including full-size sections of extrusions with factory-applied color finish.

- G. Product Schedule: For aluminum frames. Use same designations indicated on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule and glazing.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum frames to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of each type of aluminum frame and door in typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ALUMINUM FRAMES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. CRL
  - 2. Kawneer North America: [www.kawneer.com](http://www.kawneer.com).
  - 3. United States Aluminum Corp: [www.usalum.com](http://www.usalum.com).
  - 4. RACO Interior Products, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum frames and frame-manufacturer's doors from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Frames: Frames for fire-rated door assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

1. Frames for Smoke-and Draft-Control Assemblies: Tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
  - a. Air Leakage Rate: Maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. at the tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg.

## 2.3 INTERIOR ALUMINUM GLAZING FRAMES

- A. Glazing Frames: Extruded aluminum, for 1/2" glass thickness.
  1. CRL 8B Series Square profile, Surface mount mill finish aluminum frame.

## 2.4 GLASS

- A. Refer to Section 08 8000 - Glazing
- B. Glazing: FG-1 and FG-2
  1. Glazing Rabbet: For 1/2 inch glazing.
  2. Make-up:
  3. 1/2" Clear
  4. Vertical butt jointed glass.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic, stainless steel or other noncorrosive metal fasteners compatible with frames, stops, panels, reinforcement plates, hardware, anchors, and other items being fastened.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate as per manufacturer's instructions
- B. Fabricate frames for glazing with removable stops to allow glazing replacement without dismantling frame.
- C. Fabricate components to allow secure installation without exposed fasteners.

## 2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that wall thickness does not exceed standard tolerances allowed by throat size of indicated aluminum frame.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install aluminum frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Glass: Install glass according to aluminum-frame manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Inspect installation, correct misalignments, and tighten loose connections.
- B. Clean exposed frame surfaces promptly after installation, using cleaning methods recommended in writing by frame manufacturer and according to AAMA 609 and AAMA 610.
- C. Touch Up: Repair marred frame surfaces to blend inconspicuously with adjacent unrepaired surface so touchup is not visible from a distance of 48 inches as viewed by Architect. Remove and replace frames with damaged finish that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 08 1416 FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 08 1113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
  - 2. Section 09 9100 - Painting and Staining

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door indicated. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
  - 1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  - 2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
  - 3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
  - 4. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches, with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.
    - a. Provide samples for each species of veneer and solid lumber required.
  - 2. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.



## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.
- C. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated." WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
  - 1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Labels or an AWI letter of licensing for Project indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
  - 2. Provide WI-Certified Compliance Certificate indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
  - 3. Provide WI-Certified Compliance Certificate for installation.
- D. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in [plastic bags or cardboard cartons] [cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting].
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and

maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
    - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
  - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Exterior Doors: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 4. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eggers Industries
  - 2. VT Industries Inc.
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

### 2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Fabricate doors with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.
- C. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:
  - 1. Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:
  - 1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
    - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf.
    - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf.
- E. Fire-Protection-Rated Doors: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
  - 1. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - 2. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - 3. Pairs: Provide formed-steel edges and astragals.
    - a. Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel same color as doors.
    - b. Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).

## 2.3 VENEERED-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
  - 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
  - 2. Species: Select white birch.
  - 3. Cut: Rotary cut.
  - 4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
  - 5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.
  - 6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening.
  - 7. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species.
  - 8. Core: Particleboard.
  - 9. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
  - 10. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

## 2.5 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Doors for Transparent Finish: Shop prime doors with stain if required, other required pretreatments, and first coat of finish as specified in Section 09 9100 – Painting and Staining. Seal all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises with first coat of finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
  1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware.
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
  1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
  1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
  3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 08 3113 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Access doors and frames.
  - 2. Fire-rated access doors and frames.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, fire ratings, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples: For each type of access door and frame and for each finish specified, complete assembly minimum 6 by 6 inches in size.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
  - 2. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of applicable room name and number in which access door is located.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies meets the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
  - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection and temperature-rise limit ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

### 2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ACUDOR Products, Inc.
    - b. Babcock-Davis.
    - c. Cendrex Inc.
    - d. Elmdor; Morris Group International, Inc.
    - e. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
    - f. Karp Associates, Inc.
    - g. Lane-Aire Manufacturing Corp.
    - h. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - i. MIFAB, Inc.
    - j. Maxam Metal Products Limited.
    - k. Metropolitan Door Industries Corp.
    - l. Milcor; Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - m. Nystrom, Inc.
    - n. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).
  - 2. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
  - 3. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
  - 4. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door:, factory primed.
  - 5. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
  - 6. Latch and Lock: Cam latch, screwdriver operated.
- B. Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ACUDOR Products, Inc.
    - b. Babcock-Davis.
    - c. Cendrex Inc.
    - d. Elmdor; Morris Group International, Inc.
    - e. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.

- f. Karp Associates, Inc.
  - g. Lane-Aire Manufacturing Corp.
  - h. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
  - i. MIFAB, Inc.
  - j. Maxam Metal Products Limited.
  - k. Metropolitan Door Industries Corp.
  - l. Milcor; Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  - m. Nystrom, Inc.
  - n. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).
2. Description: Face of door flush with frame; with concealed flange for gypsum board] installation and concealed hinge.
  3. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
  4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
  5. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door.
  6. Latch and Lock: Cam latch, screwdriver operated.

## 2.3 FIRE-RATED ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

### A. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ACUDOR Products, Inc.
  - b. Babcock-Davis.
  - c. Cendrex Inc.
  - d. Elmdor; Morris Group International, Inc.
  - e. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
  - f. Karp Associates, Inc.
  - g. Lane-Aire Manufacturing Corp.
  - h. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
  - i. MIFAB, Inc.
  - j. Maxam Metal Products Limited.
  - k. Metropolitan Door Industries Corp.
  - l. Milcor; Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  - m. Nystrom, Inc.
  - n. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).
2. Description: Door face flush with frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal; with exposed flange, self-closing door, and concealed hinge.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.



- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A879/A879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 or A60 metallic coating.
- D. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063.
- E. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- F. Frame Anchors: Same material as door face.
- G. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
  - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  - 2. For concealed flanges with plaster bead for full-bed plaster applications, provide zinc-coated expanded-metal lath and exposed casing bead welded to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
  - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded-metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latch and Lock Hardware:
  - 1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches and locks required to hold doors tightly closed.
  - 2. Keys: Furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
  - 3. Mortise Cylinder Preparation: Where indicated, prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware.
- F. Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
  - 2. Factory Finished: Apply manufacturer's standard baked-enamel or powder-coat finish immediately after cleaning and pretreating, with minimum dry-film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- E. Stainless Steel Finishes:
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  - 2. Polished Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
    - b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  - 3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 2B.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections:
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated access door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
- B. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated access door indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 3513.13**  
**MULTIPANEL FOLDING ALUMINUM-FRAMED GLASS DOORS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 4113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for coordinating finish among aluminum fenestration units on the building exterior.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and installation details.
  - 2. Indicate dimensions, configuration of panels, and stacking layout.
- D. Samples: For each multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass door and for each color specified, 12-inch-long section with factory-applied color finish.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For doors and hardware with factory-applied color finish.
- F. Samples for Verification: For multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors and components required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Main Framing Member: 12-inch-long section with weather stripping, glazing bead and factory-applied color finish.
  - 2. Hardware: Full-size units with factory-applied finish.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data:
  - 1. For multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors to include in maintenance manuals. Include finishes, weather stripping, operable panels, and operating hardware.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by inclusion in lists and by labels, test reports, and calculations.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass door manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup for multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors, as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure to meet performance requirements.
    - b. Structural failures, including excess deflection.
    - c. Excessive water leakage or air infiltration.
    - d. Faulty operation of movable panels and hardware.
    - e. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

- f. Failure of insulating glass and laminated glass.
2. Warranty Period:
  - a. Multipanel Folding Aluminum-Framed Glass Doors: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Insulating-Glass Units: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. Laminated Glass: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - d. Aluminum Finish: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Warranty Period: **10** years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
  1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

## 2.2 MULTIPANEL FOLDING ALUMINUM-FRAMED GLASS DOORS

- A. Basis of Design: Nanawall SL45
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Nana Wall Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Arcadia Inc.
  - 3. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc.; CRH Americas, Inc.
  - 4. Euro-Wall Systems, LLC.
  - 5. LaCantina Doors; a division of JELD-WEN.
  - 6. Lanai Doors.
  - 7. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
  - 8. Panda Windows & Doors.
- C. Multipanel Folding Aluminum-Framed Glass Doors: Provide extruded-aluminum-framed multipanel folding glass doors, complete with glazing, threshold, flashings, support, and anchorage devices.
  - 1. Application: Interior.
  - 2. Stack Storage Configuration: As shown on Drawings.
- D. Frames and Door Panels: Fabricated from aluminum extrusions complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Provide factory-assembled door panels that are reglazable without dismantling panel framing.
  - 1. Door Panel Design: As indicated.

## 2.3 GLAZING

- A. Glass and Glazing: Manufacturer's standard glazing system that produces weathertight seal.
  - 1. Glass: ASTM C1036, Type 1, q3; Category II safety glass complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201.
  - 2. Safety Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark safety glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label must indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

## 2.4 HARDWARE

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard hardware, fabricated from a corrosion-resistant material compatible with door panels and other components, and complying with AAMA 907. Provide hardware designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors. Size hardware to accommodate panel weights and dimensions. Provide full-perimeter weatherstripping for each door panel.

- B. Panel Support System: Provide panel support system designed for size, weight, and performance requirements of multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors indicated. Provide carriers with sealed ball bearings.
  - 1. Overhead Supported: Provide multiwheeled overhead carriers suspended from steel or aluminum track, with lower guide system engaged in threshold for smooth operation. Limit track deflection to no more than 0.10 inch between supports when fully loaded.
  - 2. Bottom Supported: Provide carrier system designed to roll on track within threshold, with overhead wheeled guide that engages upper track.
  - 3. Adjustment: Provide panel support system capable of being adjusted for smooth operation and clearances without needing to remove panels from tracks.
  - 4. Threshold Configuration: Extruded-aluminum threshold with low profile, compliant with United States Access Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines".
    - a. Aluminum Finish: As indicated
- C. Panel Hinges: Stainless steel, multileaf hinge with painted finish to match exterior. Provide integral hangers and guides for hinges that engage panel support system.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trim: Provide interior and exterior casings, jamb extensions, and other components in material and finish to match door frames.
- B. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with door members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
  - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to the greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.
- C. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Provide anchors, clips, and accessories of aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron for multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors, complying with ASTM B456 or ASTM B633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
  - 1. Windborne-Debris Resistance: Provide anchors of same design used in windborne-debris resistance testing.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.
- B. Factory-Glazed Fabrication: Glaze sliding aluminum-framed glass doors in the factory.



## 2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 and containing not less than 50 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
  - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of Work.
- B. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of threshold substrate, and operational clearances.
- C. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure a coordinated, weathertight hinged-door installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with Drawings, Shop Drawings, and manufacturer's written instructions for installing multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors, hardware, accessories, and other components.
- B. Windborne-Debris Resistance: Anchor multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors that have been tested for windborne-debris resistance to structure, using anchoring method, fastener type, and fastening frequency identical to that used in windborne-debris resistance testing.
- C. Install multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass doors level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack of frames and panels, and without impeding thermal movement; anchored securely in place to structural support; and in proper relation to wall flashing, vapor retarders, air barriers, water/weather barriers, and other adjacent construction.

- D. Set threshold members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, to provide weathertight construction.
- E. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass door will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust hardware for proper alignment, smooth operation, and proper latching without unnecessary force or excessive clearance.
- B. Adjust hardware and operable panels to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

### **3.5 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installation. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove nonpermanent labels, excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
- B. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

### **3.6 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect multipanel folding aluminum-framed glass door surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Refinish or replace folding aluminum-framed glass doors with damaged finishes.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 08 3600 SECTIONAL OVERHEAD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Glazed Aluminum Sectional Overhead Doors
- B. Electric Operators and Controls.
- C. Operating Hardware, tracks, and support.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS:

- A. Cast-In-Place Concrete: Prepared opening in concrete. Execution requirements for placement of anchors in concrete wall construction.
- B. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Steel frame and supports.
- C. Section 06 100 - Wood Blocking and Curbing: Rough wood framing and blocking for door opening.
- D. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealers: Perimeter sealant and backup materials.
- E. Section 08 7100 - Door Hardware:
- F. Section 09 9100 - Paints and Coatings: Field painting.
- G. Electrical - Raceway and Boxes: Empty conduit from control station to door operator.
- H. Electrical - Wiring Connections: Electrical service to door operator.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. [ANSI/DASMA 102](#) - American National Standard Specifications for Sectional Overhead Type Doors.

#### 1.4 DESIGN / PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind Loads: Design and size components to withstand loads caused by pressure and suction of wind acting normal to plane of wall as calculated in accordance with applicable code.

- B. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide doors, tracks, motors, and accessories from one manufacturer for each type of door. Provide secondary components from source acceptable to manufacturer of primary components.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS.

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate plans and elevations including opening dimensions and required tolerances, connection details, anchorage spacing, hardware locations, and installation details.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificates: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Authorized representative of the manufacturer with minimum five years documented experience.
- C. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened labeled packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Protect materials from exposure to moisture until ready for installation.
- C. Store materials in a dry, ventilated weathertight location.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Convene a pre-installation conference just prior to commencement of field operations, to establish procedures to maintain optimum working conditions and to coordinate this work with related and adjacent work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Overhead Door Corp., 2501 S. State Hwy. 121, Suite 200, Lewisville, TX 75067. ASD. Tel. Toll Free: (800) 275-3290. Phone: (469) 549-7100. Fax: (972) 906-1499. Web Site: [www.overheaddoor.com](http://www.overheaddoor.com). E-mail: [sales@overheaddoor.com](mailto:sales@overheaddoor.com).
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 600.

### 2.2 GLAZED ALUMINUM SECTIONAL OVERHEAD DOORS

- A. Glazed Sectional Overhead Doors: 521 Series Aluminum Doors by Overhead Door Corporation.
  - 1. Door Assembly: Stile and rail assembly secured with 1/4 inch diameter through rods.
    - a. Panel Thickness: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm).
    - b. Center Stile Width: 2-11/16 inches (68 mm)
    - c. End Stile Width: 3-5/16 inches (84 mm) - 2 Per End
    - d. Intermediate Rail Pair Width: 3-11/16 inches (94 mm).
    - e. Top Rail Width:
      - 1) 3-3/4 inches (95 mm).
    - f. Bottom Rail Width:
      - 1) 4-1/2 inches (114 mm).
    - g. Aluminum Panels: 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) thick, aluminum.
    - h. Stiles and Rails: 6063 - T6 aluminum.
    - i. Glazing:
      - 1) 1/2 inch (12.5 mm) Low E Insulated glazing.
  - 2. Finish and Color:
    - a. Powder Coating Finish: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 3. Windload Design: Provide to meet the Design/Performance requirements specified.
  - 4. Hardware: Galvanized steel hinges and fixtures. Precision bearing rollers with hardened steel races.
  - 5. Weatherstripping:
  - 6. Flexible bulb-type strip at bottom section.
  - 7. Flexible Jamb seals.
  - 8. Flexible Header seal.

9. Track: Provide track as recommended by manufacturer to suit loading required and clearances available.
10. Motor: Direct drive, integrated gear motor/brake assembly sized for openings. Provide with a manual hand chain for operation during power outages. Operator and drive assembly is provided with all wiring harnesses needed direct from the factory
11. Entrapment Protection: Required for momentary contact or, radio control operation.
12. Wired electric sensing edge monitored to meet UL 325/2010.
13. Built-in (to motor assembly) brake mechanism eliminates uncontrolled curtain travel independent of other safeties.
14. Operator Controls:
15. Push-button operated control stations with open, close, and stop buttons.
16. Flush mounting.
17. Surface mounting.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin installation until openings have been properly prepared.
- B. Verify wall openings are ready to receive work and opening dimensions and tolerances are within specified limits.
- C. Verify electric power is available and of correct characteristics.
- D. If preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install overhead doors and track in accordance with approved shop drawings and the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Coordinate installation with adjacent work to ensure proper clearances and allow for maintenance.
- C. Anchor assembly to wall construction and building framing without distortion or stress.
- D. Securely brace door tracks suspended from structure. Secure tracks to structural members only.

- E. Fit and align door assembly including hardware.
- F. Coordinate installation of electrical service. Complete power and control wiring from disconnect to unit components.

### **3.4 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust door assembly to smooth operation and in full contact with weatherstripping.
- B. Clean doors, frames and glass.
- C. Remove temporary labels and visible markings.

### **3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit construction traffic through overhead door openings after adjustment and cleaning.
- B. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- C. Touch-up, damaged coatings and finishes and repair minor damage before Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 08 7100 DOOR HARDWARE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
    - a. Wood Doors.
    - b. Fire Rated Doors.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Conference participants shall include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product in each finish specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
  - 1. Tag Samples with full product description to coordinate Samples with door hardware schedule.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed product, in each finish specified.
  - a. Sample Size: Full-size units or minimum 2-by-4-inch Samples for sheet and 4-inch-long Samples for other products.
  - b. Full-size Samples will be returned to Contractor. Units that are acceptable and remain undamaged through submittal, review, and field comparison process

may, after final check of operation, be incorporated into the Work, within limitations of keying requirements.

2. Tag Samples with full product description to coordinate Samples with door hardware schedule.
- D. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Coordinate door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, Life Safety, and finish of door hardware.
- a. Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
2. Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in door hardware schedule in the Contract Documents.
  3. Content: Include the following information:
    - a. Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, size, and material of each door and frame.
    - b. Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
    - c. Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
- E. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals.

- B. Schedules: Final door hardware schedule.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Door Hardware: One set for each door type.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and of an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
  - 1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
  - 2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedule.
  - 3. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is currently certified by DHI as an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
- C. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
  - b. Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
  - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise indicated below:
- a. Exit Devices: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Verify Owner's Standard for Basis of Design as: Sargent 8200 Series keyed to existing System.. Typical sets as follows.

### 2.2 DOOR HARDWARE GENERAL

- A. Provide all hardware specified or required to make doors fully functional, compliant with applicable codes, and secure to the extent indicated.
- B. Provide all items of a single type of the same model by the same manufacturer.
- C. Provide products that comply with the following:
  1. Applicable provisions of federal, state, and local codes.
  2. ANSI/ICC A117.1, American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
  3. Applicable provisions of NFPA 101, Life Safety Code.
  4. Fire-Rated Doors: NFPA 80.
  5. All Hardware on Fire-Rated Doors: Listed and classified by UL as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- D. Function: Lock and latch function numbers and descriptions of manufactures series as listed in hardware schedule.
- E. Finishes: Match existing in building corridors and US26D within tenant build-out.

### 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated doors are indicated, provide door hardware complying with NFPA 80 that is listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-

protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

- B. Smoke and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that complies with requirements of assemblies tested in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
- C. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- D. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".
  - 1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf.
  - 2. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
    - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
    - b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf applied parallel to door at latch.
    - c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch high.
  - 4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 90 degrees, the door will take at least 5 seconds to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.
  - 5. Adjust spring hinges so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 1.5 seconds to move to the closed position.

## 2.4 HINGES

- A. Hinges: Provide hinges on every swinging door.
  - 1. Provide five-knuckle full mortise butt hinges unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide ball-bearing hinges at all doors having closers.
  - 3. Provide hinges in the quantities indicated.
- B. Butt Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for all hinges installed.
- C. Quantity of Hinges Per Door:
  - 1. Doors up to 84 inches High: Three hinges.
  - 2. Doors From 84 inches High up to 108 inches High: Four hinges.
  - 3. Doors Wider than 36" x 84": Four hinges.

## 2.5 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.

- B. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
  - 1. Bored Locks: Minimum 1/2-inch latchbolt throw.
  - 2. Mortise Locks: Minimum 3/4-inch latchbolt throw.
  - 3. Deadbolts: Minimum 1-inch bolt throw.
- C. Lock Backset: 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Lock Trim:
  - 1. Description: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Levers: Cast.
  - 3. Escutcheons (Roses): Cast.
  - 4. Dummy Trim: Match lever lock trim and escutcheons.
- E. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.
  - 1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
- F. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Operational Grade 1; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.

## 2.6 AUXILIARY LOCKS

- A. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.36; Grade 1; with strike that suits frame.

## 2.7 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver. Provide cylinder from same manufacturer of locking devices.
- B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.
  - 1. Core Type: Interchangeable.
- C. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.
- D. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

## 2.8 ELECTRIC STRIKES

- A. Electric Strikes: Complying with BHMA A156.31 and UL listed as a Burglary-Resistant Electric Door Strike; style to suit locks.
- B. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Assa Abloy Folger Adam EDC, HES, or Securitron: [www.assaabloydss.com](http://www.assaabloydss.com).

## 2.9 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Exit Devices:
- B. Locking Functions: Functions as defined in BHMA A156.3, and as follows:
  - 1. Entry/Exit, Free Swing: Key outside retracts latch, latch holdback (dogging) for free swing during occupied hours, not fire-rated; outside trim must be specified as lever or pull.
  - 2. Entry/Exit, Always Latched: Key outside locks and unlocks lever, no latch holdback (dogging).
  - 3. Exit Only, Secure: No outside trim, no key entry, no latch holdback, deadlocking latchbolt.
- C. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Assa Abloy Corbin Russwin, Sargent, or Yale: [www.assaabloydss.com](http://www.assaabloydss.com).
  - 2. Detex Corporation; ADVANTEX Series: [www.detex.com](http://www.detex.com)
  - 3. DORMA Group North America: [www.dorma-usa.com/usa](http://www.dorma-usa.com/usa).
  - 4. Hager Companies: [www.hagerco.com](http://www.hagerco.com).
  - 5. Von Duprin: [www.vonduprin.com](http://www.vonduprin.com).

## 2.10 KEY CONTROLS

- A. Key Management System: Coordinate with Facility Management.

## 2.11 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock.
- B. When providing keying information, comply with DHI Handbook "Keying systems and nomenclature".



## 2.12 OPERATING TRIM

- A. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6; stainless steel unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.13 SURFACE CLOSERS

- A. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

## 2.14 PUSH/PULLS/KICKPLATES

- A. A. Push/Pulls/Kickplates - Basis of Design: Ives 8190EZHD and 8400 B4E x B-CS Kickplates.
  - 1. Kick plate: 8" x 2" less door width.
  - 2. Push/Pulls: Comply with BHMA A156.6
- B. Provide push and pull on doors not specified to have lockset, latchset, exit device, or auxiliary lock.
  - 1. On solid doors, provide matching push plate and pull plate on opposite faces.
    - a. Manufacturers - Push/Pulls:
    - b. Assa Abloy Brands, Rockwood.
    - c. Hager Companies
    - d. Trimco Hardware.

## 2.15 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDER

- A. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16.

## 2.16 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- B. Maximum Air Leakage: When tested in accordance with ASTM E283 with tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg, as follows:
  - 1. Smoke-Rated Gasketing: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.

2. Gasketing on Single Doors: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.

## 2.17 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.

## 2.18 METAL PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

- A. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from 0.050-inch-thick stainless steel; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.

## 2.19 FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rating labels and as otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.
- C. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware unless otherwise indicated.

1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
2. Fire-Rated Applications:
  - a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:
    - 1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames; use threaded-to-the-head wood screws for wood doors and frames.
    - 2) Strike plates to frames.
    - 3) Closers to doors and frames.
  - b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following unless door blocking is provided:
    - 1) Surface hinges to doors.
    - 2) Closers to doors and frames.

- 3) Surface-mounted exit devices.
3. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
4. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

## 2.20 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface-applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with door and hardware manufacturers' written instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
  3. Wood Doors: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
- D. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by Owner.
  2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- E. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.
- F. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant: Engage a qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.
1. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant will inspect door hardware and state in each report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to

operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### **3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### **3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

### **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 08 8000 GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Glass products.
  - 2. Laminated glass.
  - 3. Insulating glass.
  - 4. Glazing sealants.
  - 5. Glazing tapes.
  - 6. Miscellaneous glazing materials.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 1216 - Aluminum Frames
  - 2. Section 08 3513.13 - Multipaneled Folding Aluminum-Framed Glass Doors

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
  
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters in accordance with ASTM C1036.
  
- C. IBC: International Building Code.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  
- C. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.

1. Tinted glass.
  2. Coated glass.
  3. Laminated glass.
- D. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants, in 12-inch lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of adjoining framing system.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturers of fabricated glass units, glass testing agency and sealant testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For fabricated glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricated-Glass Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of fabricated glass units who is approved by primary glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AG&M) contractors.
- C. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
- D. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is required, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or the manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain tinted and coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.



1. NGA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
  2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

## 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGC Glass Company North America, Inc.
    - b. Cardinal Glass Industries, Inc.
    - c. Guardian Glass LLC.
    - d. Pilkington North America; NSG Group.
    - e. Saint-Gobain Glass Corp.
    - f. Vitro Architectural Glass.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 LAMINATED GLASS

- A. Laminated Glass: ASTM C1172. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Kuraray America, Inc.
  - b. Pilkington North America; NSG Group.
  - c. Saflex; Eastman.
2. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
4. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

## 2.6 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
  1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
    - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  2. Provide 1/8-inch-minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

### 3.5 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type **FG-1**: Clear heat-strengthened float glass.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2".
- B. Glass Type **FG-2**: Clear fully tempered or laminated glass when next to a walking surface or in a safety location
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2".
  - 2. Provide safety glazing labeling.

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 08 8700 WRITEABLE GLASS FILM

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Architectural Window Film:
  - 1. Writeable film applied to interior glazing

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 08 1216 Aluminum Frames.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI Z97.1 - American National Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Flammability: Surface burning characteristics when tested in accordance ASTM E 84, demonstrating film applied to glass rated Class A for Interior Use:
  - 1. Flame Spread Index: no greater than 25.
  - 2. Smoke Developed Index: no greater than 55.
- B. Abrasion Resistance:
  - 1. Film shall have a surface coating that is resistant to abrasion

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 3000.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's current technical literature on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Manufacturer's Data Sheets.
  - 2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 4. Installation methods.

5. Flammability Testing, ASTM E84.
  6. Film Properties Testing, ASTM D882.
  7. Abrasion Resistance Testing, ASTM D1044.
  8. Peel Strength Testing, ASTM D3330.
- C. Verification Samples: For each film specified, two samples representing actual film color and pattern.
- D. Performance Submittals: Provide laboratory data of emissivity and calculated window U-Factors for various outdoor temperatures based upon established calculation procedure defined by the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals, Chapter

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten years experience.
1. Provide documentation that the adhesive used on the specified films is a Pressure Sensitive Adhesive (PSA).
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer with a minimum of five years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.
- C. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
1. Finish areas designated by Architect.
  2. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.
  3. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Follow Manufacturer's instructions for storage and handling.
- B. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- C. Store and dispose of hazardous materials, and materials contaminated by hazardous materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. At project closeout, provide to Owner or Owners Representative an executed current copy of the manufacturer's standard limited warranty against manufacturing defect, outlining its terms, conditions, and exclusions from coverage.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: 3M Commercial Solutions

### 2.2 ARCHITECTURAL FINISH FILMS

- A. Writeable / Erasable Finish Films:

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Film Examination:
  - 1. If preparation of glass surfaces is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of deviations from manufacturer's recommended installation tolerances and conditions.
    - a. Glass surfaces receiving new film should first be examined to verify that they are free from defects and imperfections, which will affect the final appearance.
  - 2. Do not proceed with installation until glass surfaces have been properly prepared and deviations from manufacturer's recommended tolerances are corrected. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result under the project conditions.
  - 3. Commencement of installation constitutes acceptance of conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Refer to Manufacturer's installation instructions for methods of preparation for Impact Protection Adhesive or Impact Protection Profile film attachment systems.



### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Film Installation, General:
  - 1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove left over material and debris from Work area. Use necessary means to protect film before, during, and after installation.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.
- C. After application of film, wash film using common window cleaning solutions, including ammonia solutions, 30 days after application. Do not use abrasive type cleaning agents and bristle brushes to avoid scratching film. Use synthetic sponges or soft cloths.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09 2216 NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
  - 2. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Structural plans, notes and details for Cold-Formed Metal Framing for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs and ceiling joists.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For firestop tracks, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Horizontal Deflection: For wall assemblies, limited to 1/240 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft..

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Steel Framing Industry Association.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645. Use either steel studs and runners or dimpled steel studs and runners.
  - 1. Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
  - 2. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
- D. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
  - 2. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
  - 3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 1) ClarkDietrich Metal Framing; SLP-TRK Slotted Deflection Track.
  - 2) Telling Industries Superior Metal Trim; Superior Flex Track System (SFT)
  - 3) Telling Industries; Vertical Slip Track .
  - 4) Substitutions: See section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.
- E. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
    - a. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
    - b. GCP Applied Technologies; FlameSafe FlowTrak System.
    - c. Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.
    - d. Substitute: see Section 01 2500 - Substitute Procedures.
- F. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
- G. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
  2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.
- H. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
  2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
- I. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- J. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
  2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.033 inch.
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- K. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.018 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

## 2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
  - 1. Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with holes or loops for attaching wire hangers and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 by an independent testing agency.
    - a. Type: Cast-in-place anchor, designed for attachment to concrete forms .
  - 2. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, in size indicated on Drawings .
- E. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
  - 3. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings .
  - 4. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings .
  - 5. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

- G. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System.
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.
    - d. Substitute: see Section 01 2500 – Substitute Procedures.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
  - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), non-perforated.
  - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.
- C. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C645 requirements for steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A653/A653M, hot dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Clark Dietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
    - d. Marino\WARE.
    - e. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
    - f. Steel Construction Systems.
    - g. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
    - h. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.
  - 2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
- E. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
    - d. Marino\WARE.
    - e. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
    - f. Steel Construction Systems.
    - g. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.
  2. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
  3. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.
- F. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Clark Dietrich.
    - b. Jaimes Industries.
    - c. MBA Building Supplies.
    - d. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
    - e. Marino\WARE.
    - f. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
    - g. Steel Construction Systems.
    - h. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.
  2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
  3. Depth: 7/8 inch.
- G. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Clark Dietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
    - d. Marino\WARE.
    - e. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
    - f. Steel Construction Systems. Substitutions:
    - g. See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.
  2. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- H. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: 3/4 inch.

2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch.
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- I. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or non-slotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
    - d. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
    - e. Steel Construction Systems.
    - f. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.4 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
1. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, AC193, AC58 or AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.
    - a. Uses: Securing hangers to structure.
    - b. Type: Torque-controlled, expansion anchor or adhesive anchor.
    - c. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.
  2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch.
- E. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-steel thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):



1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  2. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
    - b. Depth: 1-5/8 inches.
  3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
  4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: hat shaped.
- G. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Rockfon; ROCKWOOL International.
    - d. USG Corporation.
    - e. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
  - 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling tracks to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.
  - 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.
  - 1. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C841 that apply to framing installation.
  - 2. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C1063 that apply to framing installation.
  - 3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C844 that apply to framing installation.
  - 4. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.

1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
    - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
  6. Curved Partitions:
    - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
    - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches o.c.
- E. Direct Furring:
1. Screw to wood framing.
  2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- F. Z-Furring Members:
1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches o.c.
  2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
  3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.

- G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
  - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
  - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers' plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counter splaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  - 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.

- F. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09 2900 GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior gypsum board.
  - 2. Abuse Resistant Gypsum Board.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1600 - Sheathing for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
  - 2. Section 09 2216 - Non-Structural Metal Framing for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Gypsum wallboard.
  - 2. Gypsum board, Type X.
  - 3. Flexible gypsum board.
  - 4. Gypsum ceiling board.
  - 5. Abuse-resistant gypsum board.
  - 6. Impact-resistant gypsum board.
  - 7. Mold-resistant gypsum board.
  - 8. Cementitious backer units.
  - 9. Water-resistant gypsum backing board.
  - 10. Trim.
  - 11. Joint treatment materials.
  - 12. Laminating adhesive.
  - 13. Acoustical Joint Sealants.
  - 14. Sound-attenuation blankets.
  
- B. Samples: For the following products:
  - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.
  - 2. Textured Finishes: Manufacturer's standard size for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.
  
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of trim accessory indicated.
  
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.
2. Textured Finishes: Manufacturer's standard size for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Build mockups for the following:
    - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
    2. Each texture finish indicated.
    3. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
    4. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
    5. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.
- B. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
    - c. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - d. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - e. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - f. National Gypsum Company.
    - g. PABCO Gypsum.
    - h. USG Corporation.
    - i. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - e. National Gypsum Company.
    - f. PABCO Gypsum.



- g. PABCO Gypsum.
    - h. Panel Rey.
    - i. USG Corporation.
    - j. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - d. National Gypsum Company.
    - e. PABCO Gypsum.
    - f. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  - 2. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - e. National Gypsum Company.
    - f. PABCO Gypsum.
    - g. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- E. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C1629/C1629M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - e. National Gypsum Company.

- f. PABCO Gypsum.
    - g. USG Corporation.
    - h. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  - 2. Core: 5/8-inch, Type X.
  - 3. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  - 4. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  - 5. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  - 6. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 7. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- F. Impact-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C1629/C1629M.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - e. National Gypsum Company.
    - f. PABCO Gypsum.
    - g. USG Corporation.
    - h. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  - 2. Core: 5/8-inch, Type X.
  - 3. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  - 4. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  - 5. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements.
  - 6. Hard-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 1 requirements according to test in Annex A1.
  - 7. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 8. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- G. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - e. National Gypsum Company.
    - f. PABCO Gypsum.
    - g. USG Corporation.
    - h. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements

2. Core: 5/8-inch, Type X.
3. Long Edges: Tapered.
4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

## 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C1178/C1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
    - e. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  2. Core: 5/8-inch, Type X.
  3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. FinPan, Inc.
    - d. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.
    - e. National Gypsum Company.
    - f. USG Corporation.
    - g. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- C. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Continental Building Products Inc.
    - d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - e. National Gypsum Company.
    - f. Panel Rey.

- g. USG Corporation.
  - h. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
2. Core: 5/8-inch, Type X.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
- 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. Bullnose bead.
    - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - f. Expansion (control) joint.
    - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
    - h. Base-of-Wall Galvanized Moisture Barrier Trim: Galvanized-steel sheet, 2 inches high.
      - 1) Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
        - a) VersaDry, LLC.
        - b) Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corporation.
    - b. Gordon Inc.
    - c. Pittcon Industries.
    - d. Tamlyn.
    - e. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements
  - 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5.
  - 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.

- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
  - 3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
  
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.
  
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.
  - 3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
  
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
  
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
  
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
  2. Provide manufacturer's standard sizes in thickness indicated.
  3. Provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns-Manville "Mineral Wool Sound Attenuation Fire Batts."
    - b. Owens Corning "Thermafiber UltraBatt."
    - c. Rockwool "AFB."
- E. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Accumetric LLC; BOSS 826 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
    - b. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
    - c. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures."
  2. Acoustical joint sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Acoustical joint sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Partition End Closures: Continuous closed cell neoprene compressible filler complying with ASTM D1056; with pressure sensitive temporary positioning adhesive on both sides; thickness and width as shown, or as required to provide a complete sound seal at curtain wall mullions and glass curtain walls.
- G. Spot Grout: ASTM C475/C475M, setting-type joint compound recommended for spot grouting hollow metal door frames.
- H. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation."
- I. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation."
- J. Acoustic Box Pads (For Acoustic Control): Polybutene pads, 1/8 inch thick,
  1. Product: Lowery's Electrical Box Pads, Harry A. Lowery & Associates, Inc., or other approved by Architect.
- K. Fire Rated Box Pads: Putty Pads; moldable non-curing one component, intumescent, fire-rated material for through-penetration fire stop systems and sound attenuation systems; selfadhering; 1/8 inch thick minimum.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Temporary Heat: When the outside temperature is below 55 degrees F, provide heat and maintain in all areas where the Work is to be performed. Provide heat continuously and uniformly at 55 degrees F from 48 hours prior to start of installation until dry wall application and joint treatment is completed. Do not start installation until windows are glazed and doors installed or openings temporarily closed. Use only heating methods approved in writing by the Owner.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.

3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- K. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  1. Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Flexible Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  4. Ceiling Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  5. Abuse-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  6. Impact-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  7. Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  8. Type C: As indicated on Drawings.
  9. Glass-Mat Interior Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  10. Acoustically Enhanced Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  11. Skim-Coated Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.



- a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
  - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
  3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.
- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.
- E. Curved Surfaces:
1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch-long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
  2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches o.c.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at showers, tubs, and where indicated. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at showers, tubs, and where indicated.

- C. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install where indicated with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- D. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.
- E. For large format tile installations provide maximum substrate variation not to exceed 1/8 inch in 10 ft. and 1/16 inch in 2 ft. noncumulative along entire run of partition, when measured from surface high points with a straight-edge. No lippage allowed between adjacent panels. Coordinate with substrate panel installer and tile installer to correct deficiencies so that substrate is acceptable for large format tile installation.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Bullnose Bead: Use at outside corners or where indicated.
  - 3. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 4. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 5. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges or where indicated.
  - 6. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Exterior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
  - 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- E. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF BOX PADS

- A. Cut openings in wallboard for electrical outlets, piping and other penetrations. Maintain close tolerances so that edges will be covered by plates and escutcheons. Cut both face and back paper. Do not install electrical outlets back to back on opposing sides of partitions. Maintain at least one full stud cavity between outlets (two regular placements between).
- B. Install acoustical box pads over all electrical and other type of device boxes in sound rated walls, including but necessarily limited to electrical junction boxes, electrical switch boxes, power outlet receptacle boxes, thermostat control boxes, telephone outlet boxes and television cable or antenna outlet boxes.

- C. Install fire rated box pads over all electrical and other type of device boxes and other items penetrating fire-rated walls, including but necessarily limited to electrical junction boxes, electrical switch boxes, power outlet receptacle boxes, thermostat control boxes, telephone outlet boxes, exit sign boxes, building clock boxes, and television cable or antenna outlet boxes.
- D. Install in accordance with the printed installation instructions of the manufacturer.
- E. Brush or wipe dust and dirt from box surface.
- F. Center pad on back of box and mold around conduit or cable entering box. Mold pad around all sides covering all openings.

### 3.8 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General:
  - 1. Ventilate building spaces as required to dry joint treatment materials. Avoid drafts during hot, dry weather to prevent finishing materials from drying too rapidly.
  - 2. Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: Embed tape at joints in ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated, unless a higher level of finish is required for fire-resistance-rated assemblies and sound-rated assemblies a. Typical Locations: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Level 2: Embed tape and apply separate first coat of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges a. Typical Locations: Panels that are substrate for ceramic or acoustical tile, electrical equipment rooms, communications rooms, and where indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Level 3: Embed tape and apply separate first and fill coats of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges. Ensure joint compound is smooth and free from tool marks and ridges. a. Typical Locations: Mechanical rooms and where indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Level 4: Embed tape and apply separate first, fill, and finish coats of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges. Ensure joint compound is smooth and free from tool marks and ridges.
    - a. Typical Locations: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

- 1) Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 9100 Painting and Staining.
5. Level 5: Embed tape and apply separate first, fill, and finish coats of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges, and apply min. 1/16 in. skim coat of joint compound over entire surface where indicated for a Level "5" finish in accordance with "Recommended Specification Levels of Gypsum Board Finish" as developed by AWCI, CISCA, Gypsum Association and PDCA.
    - a. Typical Locations: Surfaces receiving gloss and semigloss enamels and other surfaces subject to severe lighting and where indicated on Drawings.
      - 1) Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 9100 – Painting and Staining.
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
  - F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  1. Indications that panels are wet, or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 09 3000 TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

Ceramic tile, Porcelain tile  
Waterproof membrane.  
Crack isolation membrane.  
Metal edge strips.

- B. Related Sections:

Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.  
09 2900 - Gypsum Board

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in "American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile".
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:

Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.5.

Step Treads: Minimum 0.5.  
Ramp Surfaces: Minimum 0.8.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of tile and grout indicated. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification:
  - Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
  - Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
  - Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
  - Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Material Test Reports: For each tile-setting and -grouting product and special purpose tile.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
  - Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from one source or producer.

Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.

- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from one manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.

- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer for each product:

Thresholds.  
Waterproof membrane.  
Crack isolation membrane.  
Cementitious backer units.  
Metal edge strips.

- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.  
Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation.  
Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .

Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.

- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

- E. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.



## 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.

Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.

- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: Tile flooring systems shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- E. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

Where tile is indicated for installation on exteriors or in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

- F. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating with continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.

### 2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Tile Type TL-1: Porcelain tile. As selected by architect

Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Keystones by DalTile; Division of Dal-Tile International Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. American Olean; Division of Dal-Tile International Inc.
- b. Crossville, Inc.
- c. Substitutions: see Section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.
- d. See Room Finish Legend:

B. Tile Type TL-2: Porcelain tile. As selected by architect

Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Keystones by Daltile; Division of Dal-Tile International Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. American Olean; Division of Dal-Tile International Inc.
- b. Crossville, Inc.
- c. Substitutions: see Section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.
- d. See Room Finish Legend:

C. Tile Type TL-3: Ceramic tile. As selected by architect

Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Keystones by Daltile; Division of Dal-Tile International Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. American Olean; Division of Dal-Tile International Inc.
- b. Crossville, Inc.
- c. Substitutions: see Section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.
- d. See Room Finish Legend:

## 2.3 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Chlorinated Polyethylene Sheet: Nonplasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with nonwoven polyester fabric; 0.030-inch nominal thickness.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following :

- a. Noble Company; Nobleseal TS.
- b. Substitutions: see Section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- C. PVC Sheet: Two layers of PVC sheet heat-fused together and to facings of nonwoven polyester; 0.040-inch nominal thickness.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

- a. Compotite Corporation; Composeal Gold.
- b. Substitutions: see Section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- D. Polyethylene Sheet: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; 0.008-inch nominal thickness.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. Schluter Systems L.P.; KERDI.
- b. Substitutions: see Section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- E. Fabric-Reinforced, Modified-Bituminous Sheet: Self-adhering, SBS-modified-bituminous sheet with woven reinforcement facing; 0.040-inch nominal thickness.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following :

- a. National Applied Construction Products, Inc.; Strataflex.
- b. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

- F. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. Bostik, Inc.; Hydroment Blacktop 90210.
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.; Laticrete 9235 Waterproof Membrane.
- c. MAPEI Corporation; Mapelastic AquaDefense with MAPEI Reinforcing Fabric.
- d. Mer-Kote Products, Inc.; Hydro-Guard 2000.
- e. Summitville Tiles, Inc.; S-9000.
- f. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- G. Fluid-Applied Membrane: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. Bostik, Inc.; Durabond D-222 Duraguard Membrane .
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.; Latapoxy 24hr HydroProofing .
- c. MAPEI Corporation; AquaDefense.
- d. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.; Southcrete 1100 Crack Suppression and Waterproofing.
- e. TEC; a subsidiary of H. B. Fuller Company; HydraFlex - Waterproofing Crack Isolation Membrane.
- f. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- H. Latex-Portland Cement: Flexible mortar consisting of cement-based mix and latex additive.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. Boiardi Products; a QEP company; Elastiment 323 Cement Based Waterproofing, Anti-Fracture/Crack Suppression Membrane.
- b. C-Cure; UltraCure 971.
- c. MAPEI Corporation; Mapelastic 315.
- d. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

## 2.4 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Chlorinated Polyethylene Sheet: Nonplasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with nonwoven polyester fabric; 0.030-inch nominal thickness.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following :

- a. Noble Company; Nobleseal CIS.
- b. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- C. Fabric-Reinforced, Modified-Bituminous Sheet: Self-adhering, modified-bituminous sheet with fabric reinforcement facing; 0.040-inch nominal thickness.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. MAPEI Corporation; Mapeguard 2.
- b. National Applied Construction Products, Inc.; Strataflex.
- c. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- D. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and fabric reinforcement.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. Bostik, Inc.; Hydroment Blacktop 90210.
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.; Laticrete Blue 92 Anti-Fracture Membrane .
- c. MAPEI Corporation; Mapelastic AquaDefense with MAPEI Reinforcing Fabric.
- d. Mer-Kote Products, Inc.; Hydro-Guard 2000.
- e. Summitville Tiles, Inc.; S-9000.
- f. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- E. Latex-Portland Cement: Flexible mortar consisting of cement-based mix and latex additive.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. C-Cure; UltraCure 971.
- b. MAPEI Corporation; Mapelastic 315.
- c. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

## 2.5 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thin Set): ANSI A118.4.

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

- a. Bostik, Inc.
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.
- c. MAPEI Corporation.
- d. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.

For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

- B. Water-Cleanable, Tile-Setting Epoxy: ANSI A118.3[.], with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

- a. Bostik, Inc.
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.
- c. MAPEI Corporation.
- d. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

## 2.6 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, composed of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Bostik, Inc.
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.
- c. MAPEI Corporation.
- d. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- C. Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Bostik, Inc.
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.
- c. MAPEI Corporation.
- d. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- D. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D.

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Bostik, Inc.
- b. Laticrete International, Inc.
- c. MAPEI Corporation.
- d. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

- E. Grout for Pregrouted Tile Sheets: Same product used in factory to pregrout tile sheets.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shape, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; stainless-steel, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
- C. Temporary Protective Coating: Product indicated below that is formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products; and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.

Petroleum paraffin wax, fully refined and odorless, containing at least 0.5 percent oil with a melting point of 120 to 140 deg F per ASTM D 87.

Grout release in form of manufacturer's standard proprietary liquid coating that is specially formulated and recommended for use as temporary protective coating for tile.

- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- E. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard silicone product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.

Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. Bonsal American; an Oldcastle company; Pro Spec Grout Sealer.
- b. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.; Silicone Grout Sealer.
- c. TEC; a subsidiary of H. B. Fuller Company; Grout Guard Penetrating Silicone Grout Sealer.
- d. Substitutions: see section 01 2500 – Substitution Procedures.

## 2.8 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.

Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm, dry, clean, free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.

Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives bonded mortar bed or thin-set mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.

- a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
- b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.

Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.

Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives or thin-set mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.

- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.
- D. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: If indicated under tile type or needed to prevent grout from staining or adhering to exposed tile surfaces, precoat them with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

### 3.3 TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation" for TCA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.

For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:

- a. Tile floors in wet areas..
  - b. Tile floors composed of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
  - c. Tile floors composed of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
  - C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
  - D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
  - E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.

For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.

Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.

Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:



Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch.  
Glazed Wall Tile: 1/16 inch.  
Decorative Thin Wall Tile: 1/16 inch.

- G. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- H. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.

Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.

- I. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.

At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in latex-portland cement mortar (thin set).

Do not extend cleavage membrane waterproofing or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in dry-set portland cement or latex-portland cement mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on cleavage membrane waterproofing or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.

- J. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- K. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to cementitious grout joints according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as grout sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

### 3.4 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install cementitious backer units and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use latex-portland cement mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Do not install tile or setting materials over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

### 3.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Do not install tile or setting materials over crack isolation membrane until membrane has cured.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

Remove epoxy and latex-portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.

- B. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 09 5123 ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AC: Articulation Class.
- B. CAC: Ceiling Attenuation Class.
- C. LR: Light Reflectance coefficient.
- D. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Acoustical Panel: Set of 6-inch-square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
  - 2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch-long Samples of each type, finish, and color.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
  2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
    - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
  4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
  5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Diffusers.
    - c. Grilles.
    - d. Speakers.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
    - g. Perimeter moldings.
  7. Show operation of hinged and sliding components adjacent to acoustical tiles.
  8. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 5 percent of quantity installed, rounded to the nearest full box.
  2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 5 percent of quantity installed.
  3. Hold-Down Clips: Equal to 5 percent of quantity installed.
  4. Impact Clips: Equal to 5 percent of quantity installed.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockup of typical ceiling area as shown on Drawings.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical tile ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

- C. In areas where gypsum board partitions are dependent on metal suspension systems for lateral support, design and install suspension system components to sustain the imposed load from the completed partition system including a minimum positive and negative pressure of 5 lbf/sq. ft. normal to the plane of the wall.

## 2.2 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Retain one or both paragraphs below to limit sources for the entire Section. Source limitations may also be specified in individual articles if desired.
- B. Source Limitations for Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceiling System: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling tile and its suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Directly Attached Acoustical Tile Ceiling Tile: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling tile from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL TILES, GENERAL

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Acoustical panel ceilings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Glass-Fiber-Based Panels: Made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- D. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.
- E. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

## 2.4 ACOUSTICAL TILES: ACT-1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product - Offices.

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong World Industries, Inc. ULTIMA Lay-in 1910, Square, 15/16, or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.
    - b. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
  2. See Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures."
- B. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:
1. Type and Form: Type IV, mineral fiber base with membrane-faced overlay; Form 2, cloth.
  2. Pattern: Texture Fine.
  3. Color: White.
    - a. Recycled Content: Not less than 85 percent.
    - b. LR: Not less than 88 percent.
    - c. NRC: Not less than 0.75.
    - d. CAC: Not less than 35.
    - e. AC: N/A.
    - f. Edge/Joint Detail: Reveal sized to fit flange of exposed suspension-system members.
    - g. Thickness: 3/4inch.
    - h. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.
  4. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

## 2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, fully concealed, metal suspension system and accessories of type, structural classification, and finish indicated that complies with applicable requirements in ASTM C635/C635M.
- B. High-Humidity Finish: Where indicated, provide coating tested and classified for "severe environment performance" in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M.
- C. Direct-Hung, Double-Web Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from and capped with cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation.
  1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a



load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 or ASTM E 1512 as applicable.

- a. Type: Postinstalled bonded anchors.
  - b. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 for Class SC 1 service condition.
2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch -diameter wire.
- E. Stabilizer Bars: Manufacturer's standard perimeter stabilizers designed to accommodate lateral forces.
- F. Hold-Down Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches o.c. on all cross tees.
- G. Impact Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard impact-clip system designed to absorb impact forces against acoustical panels.

## 2.6 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM Type 1

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Armstrong World Industries, Inc. Prelude 15/16" exposed Tee or comparable product by one of the following:
1. CertainTeed Corp.
  2. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
  3. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures."

## 2.7 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  2. CertainTeed Corp.

3. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
  4. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures."
- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.8 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
    - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
  2. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:
    - a. Henkel Corporation; OSI Pro-Series SC-175 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; AIS-919.
    - c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.
- B. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant.
  2. Concealed Joints: Nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant.
  3. Acoustical sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and

anchorage and for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine acoustical tiles before installation. Reject acoustical tiles that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Testing Substrates: Before adhesively bonding tiles to wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

- A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Assembly: Install fire-rated ceiling systems in accordance with tested fire-rated design.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:
1. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
- G. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension-system flanges into kerfed edges of tiles so tile-to-tile joints are interlocked.
1. Fit adjoining tiles to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tiles for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through ceiling.
  2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tiles and moldings, spaced 12 inches o.c.
  3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts in accordance with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- H. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners' level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Directly Attached Ceilings: Install bottom surface of tiles to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet and not exceeding 1/4 inch cumulatively.
- C. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 01 7300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- B. Acoustical tile ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09 5426 LINEAR WOOD WALL CEILING SYSTEM

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Concealed suspension system for Wood Grille ceiling panels.
  - 2. Wood Grille panels for concealed suspension system.
  - 3. Trim and accessories.
  - 4. Seismic restraints for suspended ceiling system.

#### 1.2 RELATED WORK IN OTHER SECTIONS:

- A. Division 1 – “General Conditions” for substitution requests, submittals, etc.
- B. Division 9 – “Acoustic Ceilings.”
- C. Division 15 – “Mechanical” for work to be coordinated with ceiling.
- D. Division 16 – “Electrical” for light fixture coordination.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM A 641: Standard Specification for Zinc Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire; 1992.
- B. ASTM C 423: Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method; 1990.
- C. ASTM C 635: Standard Specifications for Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceilings.
- D. ASTM C 636: Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels; 1992.

- E. ASTM E 84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 1991.
- F. ASTM E 580: Standard Practice for Application of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Requiring Seismic Restraint; 1991.
- G. AWI (QSI): Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated; 2003.
- H. CISCA: Ceiling Systems Handbook.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturers other than those listed in Paragraph 2.1 are required to submit for approval prior to bidding per Section One.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer, approved by wood ceiling manufacturer, who has completed panel ceilings similar in species, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Inspection: All work must pass inspection and approval of architect, as well as the local codes and regulations or authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Single-Source Responsibility for Wood Ceiling System: Obtain each type of Wood Grille ceiling panels from a single fabricator, with in-house Shop Drawing capabilities, in-house assembly and finishing capabilities, and with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying the project.
- E. Single-Source Responsibility for Suspension System: Obtain each type of suspension system from a single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying project.
- F. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Section according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product specified.

- C. Samples: For verification of each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples of size indicated below. Where finishes involve normal color and texture variations, include sample sets showing the range of variations expected.
  - 1. 12" x 18" samples of each panel type, pattern, and color.

## 1.6 SHOP DRAWINGS & COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Shop Drawings: Provide Shop Drawings/Coordination Drawings for all ceilings, which should include RCP and product details. Coordinate Wood Grille ceiling panels layout and installation of wood panels and suspension system components with other construction elements that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system components, partition assemblies and all perimeter conditions.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Space Enclosure and Environmental Limitations: Do not install wood panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in spaces is completed and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are being maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery & Unloading: Coordinate crate sizes, weights, unloading options, and delivery schedule with manufacturer prior to fabrication. Deliver wood panels and suspension system components to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other mistreatment.
- B. Acclimatization: Before installing wood panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content (at least 72 hours) per AWI standards.
- C. Handling: Handle Wood Grille ceiling panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.
- D. Protection:
  - 1. Personnel: Follow good safety and industrial hygiene practices during handling and installing of all products and systems, with personnel to take necessary



precautions and wear appropriate protective equipment as needed. Read related literature for important information on products before installation. Contractor to be solely responsible for all personal safety issues during and subsequent to installation; architect, specifier, owner, and manufacturer will rely on contractor's performance in such regard.

2. Existing completed work: Protect completed work above suspension system from damage during installation of suspension system components.

## 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS/WARRANTIES

- A. Extra Materials: Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels clearly describing contents.
  1. Wood Grille ceiling panels: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.
  2. Suspension System Components: Furnish quantity of each component equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.
- B. Warranties: Provide owner with a (1) year warranty for material and workmanship on all installed products.
  1. Manufacturers: All materials, wood ceiling and grid, shall be warranted for (1) one year for material and workmanship.
  2. Installer: All work shall be warranted for (1) year from final acceptance of completed work.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WOOD GRILLE CEILING PANELS AND SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. General: The following manufacturer is basis of design:
- B. Armstrong Woodworks:
  - a. 669F01W1 - Plain slice White Oak.
  - b. 24" x 96" Woodworks linear veneered wood panels
1. Wood Panels: 1200 Dowel Grille
  - 1) Species: As selected by Architect
  - 2) Member Size: 5/8" x 1 3/8"
  - 3) Edge Profile: Square

- |                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 4) Members/LF:     | 6 Members/LF          |
| 5) Assembly Style: | Dowel                 |
| 6) Panel Sizes:    | 2' x 8'               |
| 7) Fire Rating:    | Class 1(A)            |
| 8) Finish:         | Clear Interior Finish |
| 9) Reveal Scrim:   | Black reveal scrim    |

B. Or equal, as prior approved by architect.

## 2.2 WOOD GRILLE CEILING PANELS

## 2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal T-Grid Suspension System: Provide standard interior Metal Heavy Duty 15/16" 9/16", 1 1/2" suspension T-Grid system using Main Runners, Cross-tees, Wall Angle or Shadow Moldings of types, structural classifications, and black finishes indicated and that comply with applicable ASTM C 635 requirements. Comply with all applicable codes and ordinances.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for 3 times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Wire, Braces, Ties, Hanger Rods, Flat Hangers and Angle Hangers: Provide wires, rods and hangers that comply with applicable ASTM specifications.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. General: Examine substrates and structural framing to which ceilings attach or abut, with installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordination: Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling anchors whose installation is specified in other Sections.

- B. Layout: Measure each ceiling area and establish the layout of Wood Grille Panel to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and conform to the layout shown on reflected ceiling plans in accordance with wood ceiling manufacturer's approved Shop Drawings.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install 9Wood, Inc. Interior Wood Grille Style 1200 to comply with manufacturer's instructions and CISCA "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Attachments: Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members per manufacturer's instructions and in compliance with all local codes and regulations.
- C. Installation of Metal T-Bar Grid: Install, align, brace, tie-off, mount, handle interferences, and space suspension T-Grid in accordance with suspension manufacturer's instructions and in compliance with all local codes and regulations.
- D. Installation of Wood Grille (Series 1000): Install Wood Grille ceiling panels in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and in compliance with all local codes and regulations. Install with undamaged edges and fitted accurately to suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit, as required.
- E. Suspension Runners: Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Install number and use on-center spacing per wood ceiling manufacturer's instructions, as indicated on approved Shop Drawings and in compliance with all local codes.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. General: Clean exposed wood surfaces of 9Wood, Inc. Style 1200 Wood Grille ceiling panels. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace wood ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09 6513 RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Thermoset-rubber base.
  - 2. Rubber molding accessories.
  - 3. Rubber stair accessories.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flexco.
  - 2. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
  - 3. Roppe Corporation.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).

1. Style and Location:
  - a. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas indicated.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- D. Height: 4 inches.
- E. Lengths: Cut lengths 48 inches long or coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed or preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job Formed or Preformed.
- H. Colors: Match Architect's sample.

## 2.2 RUBBER STAIR ACCESSORIES

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Allstate Flooring.
  2. American Biltrite.
  3. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  4. Flexco Corporation.
  5. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
  6. Nora by Interface.
  7. PRF USA Inc.
  8. R.C.A. Rubber; SRP Industries.
  9. Roppe Corporation; Roppe Holding Company.
  10. The R.C. Musson Rubber Co.
  11. VPI Corporation.
- C. Stair Treads: ASTM F2169.
  1. Type: TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  2. Class: [1 (smooth, flat) .
  3. Nosing Style: Square, adjustable to cover angles between 60 and 90 degrees.
  4. Nosing Height: 1-1/2 inches.
  5. Thickness: 1/4 inch and tapered to back edge.
  6. Size: Lengths and depths to fit each stair tread in one piece.
  7. Integral Risers: Smooth, flat; in height that fully covers substrate.
- D. Separate Risers: Smooth, flat; in height that fully covers substrate; produced by same manufacturer as treads and recommended by manufacturer for installation with treads.

1. Style: Toeless, by length matching treads.
  2. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Stringers: Height and length after cutting to fit risers and treads and to cover stair stringers, produced by same manufacturer as treads, and recommended by manufacturer for installation with treads.
1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard.
- F. Landing Tile: Matching treads; produced by same manufacturer as treads and recommended by manufacturer for installation with treads.
- G. Locations: Provide rubber stair accessories in areas indicated.
- H. Colors and Patterns: Match Architect's sample.

## 2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Roppe Corporation.
  2. VPI Corporation.
- B. Description: Reducer strip, transition Strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.
- E. Colors and Patterns: Match Architect's sample.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- H. Job-Formed Corners:
  1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.



- a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
  - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

### **3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
  3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09 6517 VINYL TILE FLOORING (LVT)

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

3.1 Attention is directed to the contract and general conditions and all Sections within Division 1. General Requirements which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Solid Luxury Vinyl Tile Flooring
  - 2. Substrate Preparation.
  
- B. Fabricate custom school LOGO using LVT and in-laying into LVT field in areas shown on plans. LOGO design and color furnished by architect.
  
- C. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
  - 3. Section 06 1000 ROUGH CARPENTRY for plywood substrate and surface tolerances.
  
- D. References (Industry Standards):
  - 1. ASTM International (ASTM):
    - a. ASTM F1700, Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Tile
    - b. ASTM E648, Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
    - c. ASTM E662, Standard Test Method for Specific Optical Density of Smoke Generated by Solid Materials
    - d. CAN/ULC-S102.2, Surface Burning
    - e. ASTM D2047, Standard Test Method for Static Coefficient of Friction as Measured by the James Machine
    - f. ASTM F970, Standard and Modified Test Method for Static Load Limit
    - g. ASTM F970 (Modified), Modified Standard Test Method for Maximum Load Limit

- h. ASTM F925, Standard Test Method for Resistance to Chemicals of Resilient Flooring
- i. ASTM F1515, Standard Test Method for Measuring Light Stability of Resilient Flooring by Color Change
- j. ASTM F1914, Standard Test Method for Short-Term Indentation and Residual Indentation or Resilient Floor Covering
- k. ASTM F2199, Standard Test Method for Determining Dimensional Stability of Resilient Floor Tile After Exposure to Heat.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheet, care & maintenance document, submittal and/or warranty for each material and accessory proposed for use.
- C. Samples: Submit representative samples of each product specified for verification, in manufacturer's standard size samples of each resilient product color, texture and pattern required.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide resilient flooring materials manufactured in the United States of America by a firm with a minimum of 10 years' experience with resilient flooring materials of type equivalent to those specified.
  - 4. Provide resilient flooring products, including wall base, accessories, subfloor preparation products and adhesive from one manufacturer to ensure quality, color matching and compatibility.
  - 5. Manufacturer shall be capable of providing technical training and technical field service representation.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installer must be professional, licensed, insured and acceptable to manufacturer of resilient flooring materials. Project Managers or Field Supervisors must be INSTALL (International Standards & Training Alliance) certified CFI (Certified Floorcovering Installers) Certified and/or an FCICA (The Flooring Contractors Association) CIM (Certified Installation Manager) for the requirements of the project.
- C. Sustainable Design Requirements:
  - 1. Vinyl Tile flooring that does not require coatings and strippers or the use of chemicals that may be hazardous to human health to maintain.
  - 2. Vinyl Tile flooring compliant with CA Section 01350 (low-emitting (VOC) building products)

3. Vinyl Tile flooring is free of materials known to be teratogenic, mutagenic or carcinogenic including halogens, asbestos and chlorines.
4. Vinyl Tile flooring is 100% Recyclable.
5. Vinyl Tile flooring is SCS Certified.
6. Vinyl Tile flooring which qualifies for LEED Credits.
7. Vinyl Tile flooring with an enhanced wear layer topped with a UV-cured, ceramic bead finish.
8. Vinyl Tile flooring that resists the development of mold and bacteria.
9. Vinyl Tile flooring that is resistant to abrasion, chipping, cracking and indentation.
10. Vinyl Tile flooring that has excellent slip resistant qualities.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's recommendations. Protect from damage due to weather, excessive temperatures, and construction operations.
- B. Deliver materials sufficiently in advance of installation to condition materials to the required temperature for 48-hours prior to installation.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Install Luxury Vinyl Tile and Plank after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.
- B. Maintain temperature at service levels and/or the ambient temperature must remain steady ( $\pm 10^{\circ}$  F) between 65 degrees F (19 degrees C) and 85 degrees F (30 degrees C) for at least 48-hours prior to, during and until substantial completion.
- C. Maintain relative humidity at service levels, or between 40% and 65% RH.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard limited commercial warranty to cover manufacturing defects.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis-of-Design: Kardean Design Flooring
  1. VGW85T French Oak
- B. Substitutions: See Section 01 1600 – Product Requirements.

## 2.2 RESILIENT PREMIUM LVT VINYL FLOORING

- A. Luxury Vinyl Tiles - specify products with the following characteristics and meet the performance requirements detailed on the room finish Legend:
- B. Luxury Vinyl Tile & Plank shall be 1/8" gauge in thickness.
- C. Luxury Vinyl Planks shall be: sized by architect
  - 1. STYLE AND COLOR: Style and color by code number selected by architect from Full Product Brochure:
  - 2. ASTM F1700, Specification for Luxury Solid Vinyl Tile, Class III, Type Iii.
  - 3. ASTM E648, Critical Radiant Flux: Class I, >0.45 W/cm<sup>2</sup>
  - 4. ASTM E662, Smoke Density: Passes, <450
  - 5. CAN/ULC-S102.2, Surface Burning: 30 FSR, 250 SDC
  - 6. ASTM D2047, Slip Resistance: >0.60
  - 7. ASTM F970, Static Load Limit: Passes, >250 PSI
  - 8. ASTM F970 (Modified), Max Weight: 2000 PSI
  - 9. ASTM F925, Chemical Resistance: Excellent (chart available)
  - 10. ASTM F1515, Light Stability: Passes
  - 11. ASTM F1914, Residual Indentation: Passes
  - 12. ASTM F2199, Dimensional Stability: Passes
  - 13. Luxury Vinyl Tile & Planks do not require an on-site coating and strippers or the use of chemicals that may be hazardous to human health to maintain.
  - 14. Luxury Vinyl Tile & Planks are free of materials known to be teratogenic, mutagenic or carcinogenic including halogens, asbestos and chlorines.
  - 15. Luxury Vinyl Tile & Planks are 100% Recyclable.
  - 16. Luxury Vinyl Tile & Planks are SCS Certified.
  - 17. Luxury Vinyl Tile & Planks are manufactured in the U.S.A.
- D. Installation and Maintenance Materials:

1. Moisture Mitigation: Moisture testing is required for all Luxury Vinyl Tile & Plank installations. Mitigation should be performed if results indicate high levels of moisture. Recommended Moisture Mitigation Product:
  2. Excelsior MM-100, Moisture Mitigation provided by Flooring Manuf.
  3. Unit Size: 2.5 Gallons
  4. Coverage: 1000 square feet per unit with one coat
  5. MM-100 is a water, solvent and VOC free, polyurethane-based moisture mitigation product used to treat concrete slabs with excessive moisture levels beyond what flooring adhesives allow.
  6. MM-100 can block moisture up to 20 lbs. MVER or 99% RH.
  7. MM-100 is a single component product, eliminating extensive mix times and concerns regarding pot life.
  8. MM-100 does not require aggressive concrete preparation, such as shot-blasting or diamond grinding.
  9. MM-100 is not recommended as a moisture mitigation system over a non-porous substrate. The substrate should be porous as per ASTM F3191 with 90% of the original substrate exposed.
  10. MM-100 is a two-coat system that is incredibly easy to apply and does not require any specialized equipment, its excellent coverage rates also make it incredibly cost effective.
  11. Despite being a two-coat system, MM-100 is incredibly fast drying.
  12. Flooring or subsequent coatings can be installed in less than two hours.
  13. Backed by a 10-year material and labor warranty, MM-100 is a fast and easy solution for the moisture issues that commonly plague flooring installations.
- E. Substrate Preparation Products: Substrates should be prepared to properly receive the resilient flooring products being specified. Trowel-able leveling and patching compounds that are latex-modified, Portland cement based or blended hydraulic cement-based formulation. Recommended Substrate Preparation Products:
  1. Excelsior NP-230, Non-Porous Substrate Primer provided by Flexco Flooring.
    - a. Unit Size: 2.5 Gallons
    - b. Coverage: 1000 Square Feet per unit with one coat

- c. Used over MM-100 to promote adhesion of cementitious materials
  - d. Single component and fast drying to allow for quick and easy installation.
  - e. Contains an aggregate to provide mechanical bond for cementitious materials.
2. Excelsior CP-300, Cementitious Patch provided.
- a. Unit Size: 10 lb. Pail
  - b. Coverage: 33 Square Feet per unit @ 1/8"
  - c. Doesn't require primer over porous substrates
  - d. Install flooring in as little as 30 minutes
3. Excelsior SU-310, Self-Leveling Underlayment provided.
- a. Unit Size: 50 lb. Bag
  - b. 5500 PSI Compressive Strength after 28 days
  - c. Install flooring within 12 hours
  - d. Pump-able

F. Adhesives: Adhesives should be selected based on the site conditions and use of the space being installed. Recommended Adhesive Products:

- 1. Excelsior SP-500, Acrylic Aerosol Pressure Sensitive Spray Adhesive provided by Flooring Manuf.
- 2. Unit Size: 22 Ounces
- 3. Coverage: 100 Square Feet per 22 Ounce Can
- 4. Standard installations over porous and non-porous substrates
- 5. Excellent sheer strength
- 6. Approved for Immediate Use
- 7. Installation Limits
  - a. 90% RH, ASTM F2170
  - b. 8 lbs. MVER, ASTM F1869

G. Maintenance Materials: Luxury Vinyl Tile (LVT) & Plank (LVP) are low maintenance products that are protected by a durable UV-cured urethane finish that does not require a floor finish, commonly called a "wax". Though this coating greatly improves the durability of the product, daily and routine maintenance must be performed to maintain the appearance of the product. Proper maintenance of the installation is critical to the long-term performance of the flooring products being specified. Using the appropriate chemicals to maintain the product according to the environment in which it is specified is critical. Recommend maintenance products:

- 1. All-Purpose Neutral pH cleaner provided by flooring Manufacturer.
  - a. For initial maintenance
  - b. For daily and routine maintenance
- 2. Cleaner/ Maintainer provided by Flooring Manufacturer.

- a. Excelsior MF-940, Acrylic Matte Floor Finish provided by flooring Manufacturer.
- b. Acrylic Gloss Floor Finish provided by flooring Manufacturer
- c. Finish Remover provided by flooring Manufacturer.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.2 GENERAL

- A. General Contractor Responsibilities:
- B. Supply a safe, climate-controlled building and subfloor as detailed in Flooring Technical Data Sheets.
- C. Ensure substrate meets the requirements of ASTM F710, Flooring Technical Data Sheets and Excelsior Technical Data Sheets.
- D. Provide a secure storage area that is maintained permanently or temporarily at normal operating temperature and humidity conditions between 65° F and 85° F and between 40% and 65% relative humidity, for at least 48-hours prior to and during the application of the flooring, so the flooring contractor can acclimate the flooring materials per manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Provide an installation area that is weather tight and maintained either permanently or temporarily at ambient service temperature and humidity. Normal operating temperature and humidity conditions are between 65° F and 85° F and between 40% and 65% relative humidity, for at least 48-hours prior to and during the application of the flooring per the manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Ensure areas with direct prolonged exposure to sunlight are protected with protective UVA/UVB restrictive coatings or films.
- G. Areas of the flooring that are subject to direct sunlight through doors or windows should have them covered using blinds, curtains, cardboard or similar for the time of the installation and 72-hours after the installation to allow the adhesive to cure. Note: These areas should be installed using wet adhesives only.
- H. Conduct initial maintenance prior to final usage per the Flexco Flooring Care & Maintenance Documents. Do not conduct initial maintenance until adhesive has cured per the adhesive technical data.
- I. Flooring Contractor Responsibilities:



- J. Provide trained installers that are professional, licensed, insured and acceptable to manufacturer of resilient flooring materials.
- K. Ensure installers or installation teams meet one of the following requirements:
- L. Have completed INSTALL CFI (Certified Floorcovering Installers) training programs and/or are certified by INSTALL or CFI.
- M. Are being supervised by Project Managers or Field Supervisors that are CFI (Certified Floorcovering Installers) Certified and/or an FCICA (The Flooring Contractors Association) CIM (Certified Installation Manager).
- N. Follow all requirements in the appropriate Flooring and Technical Data Sheets, Care & Maintenance Documents, Warranties and other technical documents or instructions.

### 3.3 EXAMINATION

- A. General: Follow guidelines laid out in Division 01, Section 01 4000 – Quality Requirements.
- B. Verification of Conditions: Inspect all substrates to ensure they are clean, smooth, permanently dry, flat, and structurally sound. Confirm all areas are properly sealed and acclimated per manufacturer's requirements.
- C. Verification of Products: In accordance with manufacturer's installation requirements, visually inspect material for size, color or visual defects prior to installing. Any material that is incorrect or visually defective shall not be installed.

### 3.3 SUBSTRATE PREPARATION

- A. General: Follow guidelines laid out in Division 01, Section 01 7100 – Examination and preparation. All work required ensuring substrate or subfloor meets manufacturers' guidelines are the responsibility of the general contractor.
- B. Preparation: Ensure substrate meets the requirements of ASTM F710 for concrete substrates and ASTM F1482 for wood substrates and Flooring Technical Data Sheets and Excelsior Technical Data Sheets.
- C. Substrates must be free of visible water or moisture, dust, sealers, paint, sweeping compounds, curing compounds, residual adhesives and adhesive removers, concrete hardeners or densifiers, solvents, wax, oil, grease, asphalt, visible alkaline salts or excessive efflorescence, mold, mildew and any other extraneous coating, film, material or foreign matter.
- D. It is recommended that all substrates have a floor flatness of FF32 and/or flatness tolerance of 1/8" in 6' or 3/16" in 10'.
- E. Acclimate all products to be used during the installation and the installation environment prior to installation according to the manufacturers written instructions.

F. Concrete Substrates:

1. Moisture Testing: Perform moisture testing per the manufacturer's recommendations to determine conditions, it is recommended to treat new and existing slabs a little bit different to ensure adequate conditions exist for installation.
2. New Slabs on all grade levels: it is recommended to perform ASTM F2170 Relative Humidity testing no more than a week prior to installation to determine the levels present and when to proceed with the installation.
3. Existing Slabs on all grade levels: in addition to ASTM F2170 testing, existing slabs that have previously had floor covering installed, must be tested to ASTM F1869 Calcium Chloride test kits to determine the MVER of the concrete.
4. Mechanically remove contamination on the substrate that may cause damage to the flooring material, this includes paint, permanent and non-permanent markers, pens, crayons, etc. Leaving these on the substrate or marking with them on the back of the material could cause bleed through and damage the flooring.
5. Fill cracks, holes, depressions and irregularities in the substrate to prevent transferring through to the surface of the resilient flooring. Use a high-quality Portland cement-based product such as Excelsior installation products provided by flooring Manufacturer.
6. Do not install material over expansion joints.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Follow all relevant guidelines detailed in Division 01, as well as flooring and adhesive manufacturer's technical data sheets.
- B. Luxury Vinyl Tile and Plank Flooring: Install material in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  1. Select the appropriate adhesive for the application and job site conditions.
  2. Install material according to directional arrows on the back of the material.
  3. Ensure material is rolled appropriately into the adhesive using a 100 lb. three section roller.

### 3.5 CLEANING & MAINTENANCE

- A. General: Clean up installation area and vacuum, dust or wipe material to remove any dirt, dust or debris.
  1. Initial Maintenance: Conduct initial maintenance per the manufacturer's recommended procedures stated in the Maintenance Documents. All documentation is available upon request or from the Flooring website. Excelsior Cleaning and Maintenance products are the recommended products for use; all can be found linked to the product on the Floors website.

2. Regular Maintenance: Conduct maintenance on regular intervals as needed. Insufficient cleaning will reduce the wear life of the flooring and alter the aesthetic properties of the tiles and planks. The amount of maintenance depends directly upon the amount of dirt and particulates the floor is subjected.

### 3.6 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. General: Follow all federal, state and local requirements and Division 01, Section 01 7800 Closeout Submittal requirements for these activities.
- B. Protection: Protect newly installed material with construction grade paper or protective boards, such as Masonite or Ram Board, to protect material from damage by other trades. Be sure all construction debris is swept up and removed prior to the protective material being installed and does not get trapped underneath. Limit usage and foot traffic according to the adhesive's requirements. When moving appliances or heavy furniture, protect surfaces from scuffing and tearing using temporary floor protection as well.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 09 6566 RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Rubber floor tile.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 6513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for wall base and accessories installed with resilient athletic flooring.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of flooring with floor inserts for gymnasium equipment.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details and locations of the following:
  - 1. Floor patterns.
  - 2. Layout, colors and widths.
  - 3. Locations of floor inserts for athletic equipment installed through flooring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each type, color, and pattern specified, 6-inch-square in size and of the same thickness indicated for the Work.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For resilient athletic flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish no fewer than 2 percent of each type, color, pattern, and size of floor tile installed.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storing.
- B. Store materials to prevent deterioration.
  - 1. Store tiles on flat surfaces.
  - 2. Store rolls upright.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Adhesively Applied Products:
  - 1. Maintain temperatures during installation within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive flooring 48 hours before installation, during installation, and 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 2. After post installation period, maintain temperatures within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
  - 3. Close spaces to traffic during flooring installation.
  - 4. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after flooring installation unless manufacturer recommends longer period in writing.
- B. Install flooring after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Ecore Inc.: North America Headquarters and Manufacturing Toll Free: USA 1 866 795-2732

### 2.2 RUBBER FLOOR TILE

- A. ERCORE Performance Ultra Tile is prefabricated vulcanized composition rubber (VCR) athletic flooring.

# Performance UltraTile

Rubber Tiles for Ultimate Durability

## PRODUCT ATTRIBUTES

- **2.5mm Vulcanized Composition Rubber (VCR) Surface Layer**  
Provides excellent durability and slip resistance
- **1" Molded VCR UltraTile Base Layer\***  
Upcycled VCR molded base layer provides extreme shock absorption and substrate protection.

\*Installed using Ecore's Quad Blok installation system. Quad Bloks allow the flooring system to float and the tiles to be installed in conjunction with RageTurf UltraTiles.

Performance UltraTile® is designed with a patented "ultra" high-density surface layer on a molded base. This 24-by-24-by-1-inch modular tile offers enhanced impact absorption and substrate protection in moderate to extreme weight drop applications.



## APPLICATIONS


- Selectorized Strength
- Free Weights
- Cardio
- Olympic Style Lifting
- Functional Training
- Childcare / Playzones
- K-12 / Higher Education
- Outdoor (must be fully adhered)


## BENEFITS

- Durable
- Sustainable
- Easy installation with Quad Blok installation system
- Ease of maintenance
- Slip-resistant
- Custom logos available

## NOMINAL DIMENSIONS

Available as a standard in 24" x 24" tiles. Talk to your local sales rep to determine availability, pricing, minimums, and lead times.

 1" x 24" [61 cm] x 24" [61 cm]

 **Quad Blok:** 1/2" H x 4 3/4" x 4 3/4"  
Adhesive = 1 28oz Tube / 40 Quad Bloks

NRG =



**Force Reduction: 50.2%**  
Absorption of impact energy



**Energy Restitution: 47.9%**  
Useful return of impact energy

Typical Deltac Field Tester Results

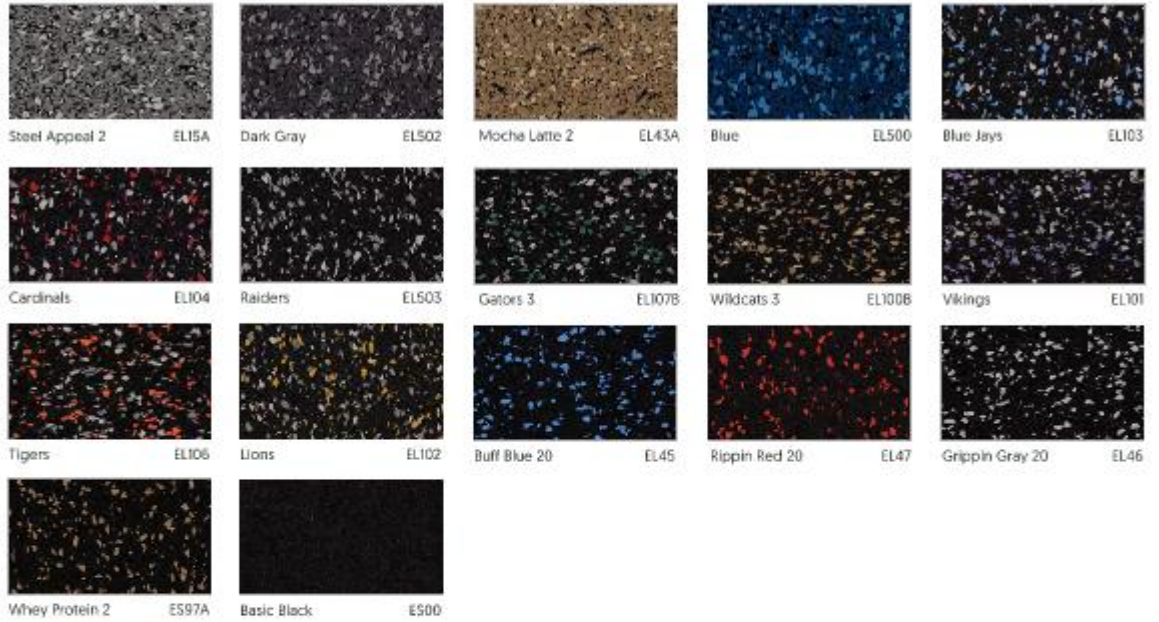


ecoreintl.com 866.795.2732

ecore

## Performance UltraTile

### COLOR SWATCHES



### TECHNICAL DETAILS

Performance Criteria	Test Standard	Typical Results
Recovery after Static Load @400 psi	ASTM F970 Modified	0.005"
Coefficient of Friction	ASTM D2047	> 0.8
FloorScore	CA 01350	Certified
Abrasion Resistance	ASTM D3389	Pass
Flammability - Pill Test	ASTM D2859	Pass
Impact Insulation Class (IIC)*	ASTM E492	56
Delta IIC*	ASTM E2179	27

\*Tested on a 6" concrete slab with no ceiling.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 09 6818 TILE CARPETING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section covers the specification standards for modular and broadloom carpet. It includes construction, submittals, installation and warranty information regarding both modular and broadloom carpets.

#### 1.3 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: During a regular scheduled construction meeting where a UH Project Manager is in attendance, address the following items prior to the installation of modular or broadloom carpet.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to modular and broadloom carpet installation including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
    - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
    - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.
    - d. Review of submitted installation drawings indicating all carpets on project, patterns and/or layouts, seaming diagrams and flooring transitions.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data
  - 1. Include manufacturer's written specification and warranty information in its entirety regarding the specified carpet to be installed on the Project. The specification shall clearly state the manufacturer's name, style/collection, pattern and color of the product. It shall also include all physical attributes (e.g. durability, fade resistance) of the product within the specification.
  - 2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate related to the project. All installations shall adhere to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Shop Drawings, to Include the following details:
  - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet.



2. Type of subfloor.
  3. Type of installation.
  4. Carpet Specifications.
  5. Pattern type, location, and direction.
  6. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
  7. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
  8. Transition details to other flooring materials.
  9. Carpet type, color, and dye lot.
  10. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in Schedules.
1. Carpet Tile: (2) - Full-size Samples.
  2. Transition strips and other accessory stripping: 12 inch long sample.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: Tests performed by a qualified testing agency on the specified products.
- C. Sample Warranty

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's methods for maintaining carpet, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures. Manufacturers recommended maintenance schedule.
- B. Warranty: Full warranty information from the manufacturer. Must include "Proof of Purchase" indicating original install dates.

## 1.7 ATTIC STOCK SUPPLY

- A. Furnish extra materials from the same product run and dye lot that match products installed. Carpet shall be in its original packaging with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd. Attic stock shall be provided for each carpet type.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the Floor Covering Installation Board or who can demonstrate compliance with its certification program requirements.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Ratings: Where indicated, [provide carpet identical to those of assemblies tested for fire response according to NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency] [provide products with the critical radiant flux classification indicated in Part 2, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 648 by an independent testing and inspecting agency] acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Mockups: Architect or UH Project Manager may require a mockup for certain carpet applications. Verify with both Architect and UH Project Manager if mockups are required.
- D. Electrostatic Propensity: Less than 3.5 kV according to AATCC 134.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty for Modular Carpet: The warranty information listed below are minimums. Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of modular carpet installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: minimum 15 years from date of occupancy. Chairpads shall not be required to maintain warranty.
  - 2. Back Delamination – lifetime.
  - 3. Edge Ravel – lifetime.
  - 4. Static Protection –lifetime.
  - 5. Wear – surface wear shall not be greater than 10 percent by weight for the first 15 years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MODULAR CARPET

- A. Basis of Design: Tarkett
  - 1. Balance 11339, Lithography 30804
  - 2. Offset 11338 Ink Film 30807
  - 3. Offset, Die Cut 30806
- B. Minimum specifications for modular carpet.
  - 1. Fiber: SDN Type 6,6 Nylon fibers
  - 2. Dye Method: 100 percent Solution Dyed.
  - 3. Tufted face Weight: 28 oz.
  - 4. Pile Construction: Loop construction.
  - 5. Gauge: 1/12inch.
  - 6. Stitches per inch: 9.8

7. Construction: Tufted, Textured Loop, Tip Shear
8. Average Density: 6,837
9. Nominal Thickness 0.39"
10. Nominal Total Weight: 119.0 oz/yd<sup>2</sup>
11. Backing: High performance, PVC-Free WellBAC Comfort Plus Cushion
12. Size: 18" x 36" Ashlar
13. Recycled Content: 40 percent.
14. Applied Soil-Resistance: StainSmart.
15. Flammability: (Radiant Panel ASTM-E-648)  $\geq 0.45$  (Class I)
16. Smoke density: (NFPA-258-T or ASTM-E-662)  $\leq 450$

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
  1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
  3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- C. For wood subfloors, verify the following:
  1. Underlayment over subfloor complies with requirements specified in Section 06 1053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry."
  2. Underlayment surface is free of irregularities and substances that may interfere with adhesive bond or show through surface.
- D. For metal subfloors, verify the following:
  1. Underlayment surface is free of irregularities and substances that may interfere with adhesive bond or show through surface.
- E. For painted subfloors, verify the following:
  1. Perform bond test recommended in writing by adhesive manufacturer.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FIELD CONDITIONS AND INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet installation.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inchwide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- D. Clean metal substrates of grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if directed by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.
- E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.
- F. Comply with manufacturer's requirements for temperature, humidity, ventilation limitations and installation methods for the particular subfloor or substrate. If the manufacturer does not have a set standard, reference the Carpet and Rug Institute Carpet Installation Standard 2011, First Edition.
- G. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet until spaces are enclosed and weather tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- H. Do not install carpet over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- I. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet, install carpet before installing these items.
- J. All installations shall meet the manufacturer's guidelines. This is extremely important when concerning the warranty of the product.
- K. Installation Method: A "NO-Glue Grid" method of installation is preferred if feasible and available on modular carpet only. Other adhesives shall be of low odor/solvent content. Verify the installation method and only use products recommended by the Manufacturer. Self-stick method type requires approval by UH FPC.
- L. Maintain dye lot consistency throughout the project.

- M. Cut and fit carpet to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by manufacturer.
- N. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- O. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, non-staining marking device.
- P. Stagger joints of modular carpet so carpet tile grid is offset from access flooring panel grid. Do not fill seams of access flooring panels with carpet adhesive; keep seams free of adhesive.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet:
  - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
  - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
  - 3. Vacuum carpet according to manufacturer's guidelines.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 09 7753 VEGETATED WALL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vegetated Wall Systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture and species specified.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

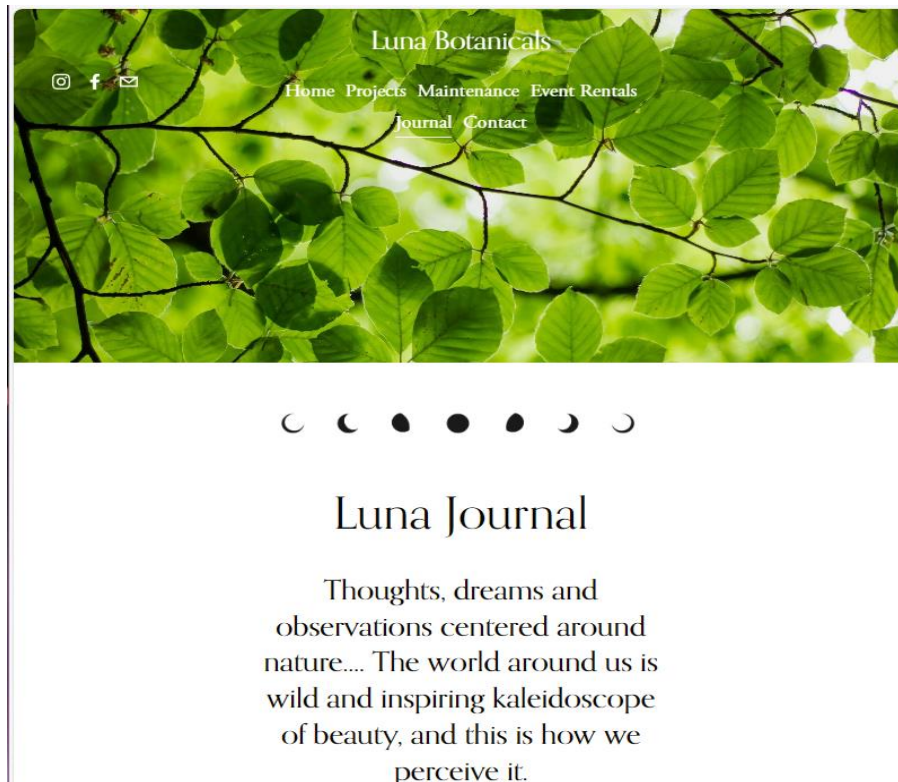
## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by supplier, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VEGETATION

- A. Manufacturers: Luna Botanicals
  - 1. 1235 St Thomas Street, Ste 102
  - 2. New Orleans, Louisiana 70130
  - 3. 504 475 0110



## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Proceed with installation only upon satisfactory conditions. Are approved.
  - 1. Installation of botanical products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION**



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 09 9100 PAINTING AND STAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. The Contract Forms, and Conditions of the Contract as provided, and applicable parts of Division 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, shall be included in and made a part of this Section.
- B. Examine all Drawings and all other Sections of the Specifications for requirements therein affecting the work of this Section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Surface preparation and field application of paints and stains on interior substrates where shown or required.
- B. Surface preparation and field application of paints and stains on exterior substrates where shown or required.

#### 1.3 ITEMS TO RECEIVE PAINT

- A. Generally, all new items that are normally painted in any typical building. This Section includes: This Section consists of painting work where shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as required for a complete and proper installation. Painting work includes but is not limited to the surface preparation and application of coated finishes, and subsequent touch-up, of interior and exterior items and surfaces as indicated on the Contract Drawings and as scheduled herein.
  - 1. Gypsum board partition and wall surfaces, ceilings and soffits.
  - 2. Gypsum veneer plaster partition and wall surfaces, ceilings and soffits.
  - 3. Metal doors and frames.
  - 4. Interior handrails and guardrails.
  - 5. All ferrous metal
  - 6. All interior wood
  - 7. All prime coated hardware
  - 8. All exposed conduit, outlet boxes and electrical cabinets, excluding those located in mechanical rooms.
  - 9. All exposed pipe, plumbing, and ductwork, excluding those located in mechanical rooms.
  - 10. All exposed sprinkler equipment, piping and risers excluding those located in equipment rooms or closets.
  - 11. All metal grilles, except aluminum, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 12. All exposed concrete masonry units (CMU).
  - 13. Roof top equipment and support structures.

14. Wood door tops and bottoms, cut in the field, or without factory finish.
15. Factory primed aluminum counter supports.
16. Exposed to view ceiling structure.
17. Exposed to view sprinkler piping.
18. Exposed to view electrical conduit and raceways.
19. Elevator ladder, exposed to view lintels and other miscellaneous metal items furnished under Section 05 5000 - METAL FABRICATIONS which are not factory finished.
20. Access panels and frames.

#### 1.4 ITEMS NOT TO BE PAINTED

- A. Do not paint the following surfaces and materials.
  1. Concealed from view surfaces, except as indicated otherwise in the Contract
- B. Additional surfaces not included, as applicable to the project, include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Plate steel guardrails to be pickled or patina applied by methods other than traditional painting.
  2. Areas above finished ceiling or scheduled "unpainted" on the Finish Schedule of the drawings, except for those items within those spaces scheduled to painted.
  3. Exposed concrete, unless noted otherwise.
  4. Shop coat of paint on metal, except for damaged shop primer touch-up (unless noted otherwise.
  5. Structural steel and related items scheduled to receive sprayed fireproofing or encased in concrete.
  6. Face brick, unless otherwise noted.
  7. Natural stone.
  8. Aluminum other than mill finished or factory primed and copper items, unless noted otherwise.
  9. Chrome or nickel plating, bronze, brass.
  10. Factory finished items other than prime painted to be field paint finished.
  11. Glass and glass masonry.
  12. Sealants of types which should not be painted and to which paint will not adhere.
  13. Plastic laminate items, such as doors, countertops, casework, etc.
  14. Acoustical ceiling and grid work, unless noted otherwise.
  15. Acoustical panels
  16. Piping of copper, aluminum, and stainless steel.
  17. Exposed pipe, plumbing, ductwork, and mechanical equipment in mechanical rooms.
  18. Stainless steel items.
  19. Ceramic or tile of any kind.
  20. Valves and controls.
  21. Sprinkler heads.
  22. Name plates on equipment.
  23. Fire rating labels, including those on fire rated doors and frames.
  24. Finish hardware, except that which is factory primed and designated as "BHMA 600", if any, in Finish Hardware Section.
  25. Existing construction, unless noted otherwise.

- C. Materials not noted to be refinished or to receive a finish, except as noted, including, but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Roofing
  - 2. Asphalt paving, except for parking and lane striping, fire lane, and "wheelchair" handicapped access parking spaces.
  - 3. Concrete paving and curbs, except for parking and lane striping, fire lane, and "wheelchair" accessible parking spaces.
  - 4. Flooring, except those to receive game striping, or as noted.
- D. Color coding of Mechanical Room pipes whether insulated or not, unless noted or directed otherwise.

## 1.5 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 3000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE: Concrete partitions and walls.
- B. Section 04 2000 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY: Concrete masonry partitions.
- C. Section 05 5000 - METAL FABRICATIONS: Shop priming of designated miscellaneous metals.
- D. Section 06 2000 - FINISH CARPENTRY: Wood trim items, setting and filling of nails, sanding of wood trim.
- E. Section 07 9200 - JOINT SEALANTS: Requirements for sealant and backing materials.
- F. Section 08 1113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES: Shop priming of metal frames and steel doors.
- G. Section 08 1416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS: Wood doors, ) wood doors, primed to receive field-applied paint finish.
- H. Section 08 3100 - ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS: Shop primed access panels, occurring in partitions and walls.
- I. Section 09 2900 - GYPSUM BOARD: Drywall partitions, ceilings and soffits, including joint treatment and sanding.
- J. Section 10 4413 – FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS: Shop priming of cabinet doors and frames; field finishing of cabinet.
- K. Division 22 - PLUMBING: Prefinished items such as plumbing fixtures, sprinkler heads, convectors, anemostates and similar surfaces and materials.
- L. Division 26 - ELECTRICAL: Prefinished items such as light fixtures, switch gear, electrical distribution cabinets and similar surfaces and materials.
- M. Respective sections: Factory-finishing of mechanical, plumbing, fire protection and electrical equipment.

## 1.6 REFERENCES

- A. Reference Standards: Comply with applicable requirements of the following standards and those others referenced in this Section, under the provisions of Section 01 4200 - REFERENCES. Where these standards conflict with other specified requirements, the most restrictive requirements shall govern.
1. ANSI/ASTM D 16 - Definitions of Terms Relating to Paint, Varnish, Lacquer, and Related Products.
  2. ASTM D 2016 - Test Method for Moisture Content of Wood.
  3. All applicable federal, state and municipal codes, laws and regulations for flammability and smoke generation of interior finishes.
- B. Definitions:
1. "Paint" includes coating systems materials, primers, emulsions, enamels, stains, sealers and fillers, and other applied materials specified herein, whether used as prime, intermediate or finish coats.
  2. Sheen: Specular gloss readings in accordance with ASTM D523.
    - a. Flat: less than 5 (measured at 85 degrees).
    - b. Eggshell: 5 – 20 (measured at 60 degrees).
    - c. Satin: 15-35 (measured at 60 degrees).
    - d. Low Luster: 25 – 35 (measured at 60 degrees).
    - e. Semi-Gloss: 30 -65 (measured at 60 degrees).
    - f. Gloss: 65 or more (measured at 60 degrees).
  3. Gloss as defined for LEED VOC requirements. Specified specular gloss readings below are as tested in accordance with ASTM D523.
    - a. Flat: less than 15 (measured at 85 degrees), less than 5 (measured at 60 degrees).
    - b. Non-Flat: greater than 15 (measured at 85 degrees), greater than 5 (measured at 60 degrees).

## 1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Material lists. Give the supplier's name, product name, number and generic description of each proposed product and its use. Provide product data sheets if so requested.
- B. Samples. Submit full range of colors, patterns, textures and finishes available for selection, including the following:
- C. Color Chips: Provide complete duplicate sets of color chips for color selection.

- D. Small Applied Samples: Provide pieces of actual material on which paint will occur with minimum dry mil thickness of specified paint. Provide painted 12-inch x 12 inch actual gypsum wallboard samples with approved textures for Architect's approval. Approved samples will become standard for which all work will be judged.
- E. Sheen Samples: Provide full range of varying sheens when sheens are controllable by intermixing.
- F. Installed Samples. Provide large size samples for approval. Approved samples may be left in place as part of the work.
- G. One room and/or area, as selected by the Architect, shall be painted with materials specified or accepted and applied directly from container, un-thinned. After acceptance by Architect, room and/or area shall be standard of quality of entire project.
- H. Certification. Furnish a letter certifying that materials submitted are truly equivalent or better than those called out in the finish schedule.
- I. Submit the following under provisions of Section 01 7800 – Closeout Submittals.
  - 1. Color chips: After final approval of all colors and tints by the Architect, submit to the Owner, color chips of all coatings used, with manufacturer's name and mix designation of the coating for the purpose of future re-ordering of coatings. Color chips shall be at least six (6) square inches in size, for each color and tint.

## 1.8 RESPONSIBILITY OF COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work specified herein with the following work:
  - 1. Provide information to preceding trades for proper preparation of substrate.
  - 2. Inspect substrate before proceeding to verify proper preparation.
- B. Notify Architect of any item to receive paint which may not be covered by a scheduled finish type. Architect will furnish appropriate Design Standard section

## 1.9 MATERIALS

- A. Delivery and Storage: Products shall be delivered to jobsite in unopened containers bearing manufacturer's labels intact and legible at time of use. Storage shall be in designated areas away from excessive heat and open flames and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

## 1.10 QUALITY OR GRADE:

- A. Applicator:

- B. Company specializing in commercial painting and finishing with 3 years minimum documented experience.
  - 1. Shall provide at Closeout to the Project Manager, a notarized certification that paint used is as specified.
- C. Single source responsibility: Provide primers and other undercoat paint produced by same manufacturer as finish coats. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and use only within recommended limits.
- D. Paints and coatings shall be the manufacturer's highest professional quality material of types specified and shall be applied directly from containers in which material is purchased, except where thinning is recommended by manufacturer and approved by Project Manager to suit intended use, i.e. painting acoustical tile or panels without destroying their acoustical properties.
- E. Do not use water-based paints formulated with aromatic hydrocarbons (organic solvent with a benzene ring in its molecular structure), formaldehyde, halogenated solvents, mercury or mercury compounds, or tinted with pigments of lead, cadmium, chromium VI and their oxides. Water based paints shall be low VOC and shall have a flash point of 61 degrees C or greater.
- F. Spray Equipment: Shall be the type recommended for the application and shall be maintained clean and in proper working order.
- G. Brushes, Rollers, etc., Shall be new of the various sizes and types recommended for each application, and shall be properly cleaned and stored in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at the end of each days' use.
- H. Brushes and rollers shall be replaced as often as necessary to attain the best finish quality in the Work.

## 1.11 APPLICATION

- A. Application Shall not proceed on surfaces which are not suitable to be painted, until such surfaces have been corrected. Surfaces shall be corrected by the responsible trades. Surfaces not suitable for painting shall include, but not be limited to:
  - 1. Damaged surfaces.
  - 2. Oily, greasy, dusty or excessively soiled surfaces.
  - 3. Non-dressed welds which will be exposed to view.
  - 4. Lack of touch-up where specified.
  - 5. Rusted or excessively deteriorated shop-prime painted surfaces.
  - 6. Number of coats of each of several finishes shall be in accordance with detailed specifications, which will produce first quality finish if properly applied. If number of coats specified fails to produce a finish acceptable to Project Manager, the General Contractor shall apply additional coat or coats at his own expense until acceptable finish is achieved.

## 1.12 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. The applicator of work specified herein is responsible to ensure that all paints, enamels, and coatings, proposed to be applied hereunder, are compatible with coatings used for shop-primed items and items which have been prime-coated under the work of other trades.
- B. Immediately notify the Architect in writing of conditions which may require a change in the specifications of this Section before proceeding with the work. Failure to do so, in a timely fashion, so as not to interfere with the schedule of work of this Contract, shall be construed as acceptance of the coatings specified. Perform all corrective measures, at no cost to the Owner, for any defects in the work, resulting from the use of such materials.
- C. Painting work should be scheduled so as to minimize touch-ups. Interior painting is to be without flashmarks. Should flashmarks occur due to touch-ups, the Contractor shall be required to redo the entire surrounding wall surface.
- D. Do not order materials until all required schedules have been properly submitted, reviewed by the Contractor and Approved by Architect.

## 1.13 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; container labeling shall include manufacturer's name, type of paint, color mix designation, expected coverage, surface preparation instructions, instructions for mixing and reducing, drying time, and clean-up recommendations.
- B. Store materials, conforming with applicable codes and fire regulations, in designated spaces. Keep storage area secure when direct access is not required or when not performing work under this Section. Take precautionary measures to prevent fire hazards and spontaneous combustion, maintain a dry-chemical type fire extinguisher in all areas where materials of this Section are being stored or used.
- C. Store paint materials in a well-ventilated area at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees Fahrenheit and a maximum of 90 degrees Fahrenheit.
- D. Do not use the sanitary system for mixing or disposal of refuse material. Carry water to mixing rooms and dump waste material in a suitable refuse receptacle. Remove oily rags and waste each day.
- E. Use all means necessary to protect materials before, during, and after application and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

## 1.14 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Provide continuous ventilation and heating facilities to maintain surface and ambient temperatures above 45 degrees Fahrenheit for 24 hours before, during and 48 hours after application of finishes, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.



- B. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is above 50 percent unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Apply paints and finishes above minimum temperature conditions in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Apply water-based paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 degrees F and 90 degrees F, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- E. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 degrees F and 95 F, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- F. Do not paint in snow, rain, fog or mist, or when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or to damp or wet surfaces, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions. Painting may be continued during inclement weather if areas and surfaces to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by paint manufacturer during application and drying periods
- G. Provide sufficient lighting to maintain 80 foot-candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

#### **1.15 EXTRA STOCK**

- A. Upon completion of the work of this section, deliver to the Project Manager, an extra stock equaling ten (10) percent or a minimum of one (1) gallon, whichever is greater, of each color, type, and gloss of paint used in the work, tightly sealing each container and clearly labeling contents and location where used.

#### **1.16 WARRANTY**

- A. Special See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals.
- B. The undertaking of a painting subcontract will indicate that the subcontractor will warrant the work specified herein for two (2) years against becoming unserviceable or causing an objectionable appearance resulting from either defective or nonconforming materials and workmanship.
- C. Defects shall include by not be limited to the following:
  - 1. Discoloring noticeably by yellowing, streaking, blooming, changing color or darkening
  - 2. Mildewing
  - 3. Peeling, cracking, blistering, alligating or releasing from the substrate.
  - 4. Chalking or dusting excessively
  - 5. Changing sheen in irregular fashion
  - 6. Softening or becoming tacky
  - 7. Bubbling

- D. In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary for approval of the Project Manager and at no additional cost to the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. All paint materials selected for coating systems for each type of surface shall be the product of a single manufacturer and shall, as a system, have flame spread, fuel contribution, and smoke density test results less than 25.
- B. Paints:
1. Glidden Professional paints (formerly ICI Dulux Paints).
  2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  3. Devoe Paint Company
  4. Fuller O'Brien Paints
  5. Martin-Senour Paints (Div. of Sherwin Williams)
  6. Monarch Paint Company
  7. Pittsburgh Paints, PPG Industries, Inc., Professional & High-Performance Coatings
  8. Porter Paints
  9. Pratt & Lambert Paints (Div. of Sherwin Williams)
  10. Kelly-Moore Paint Co.
  11. The Sherwin Williams Co.
  12. Tnemec Company Inc.
- C. Stains:
1. Olympic Stains, PPG Industries, Inc., Professional & High-Performance Coatings
  2. Samuel Cabot, Inc.
- D. Epoxy coatings:
1. Glidden Professional paints (formerly ICI Dulux Paints).
  2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  3. Devoe Paint Company.
  4. Pratt & Lambert Paints (Div. of Sherwin Williams)
  5. Kelly-Moore Paint Co.
  6. The Sherwin Williams Co.
  7. Tnemec Company Inc.
- E. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Coatings: Ready mixed, except for field catalyzed coatings with good flow and brushing properties; capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags. Color pigments shall be processed to a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a

homogeneous coating. Provide best quality grade, where manufacturer makes more than one grade of any material specified.

- B. Accessory Materials: Linseed oil, turpentine, paint thinners and other materials recommended by paint and coatings manufacturer as necessary to achieve finishes specified.
- C. Patching and Surface Preparation: Latex fillers as recommended by paint and coatings manufacturer.
- D. Liquid zinc coating, for touch-up of welds, scratches, and abrasions in galvanized steel: Low VOC organic zinc-rich coating containing 92% metallic zinc, by weight in the dried film (ASTM D520, Type III) and conforming to SSPC Paint 20, Type II, Level 1. Liquid zinc coating shall be recognized under the Component Program of Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. as an equivalent to hot-dip galvanizing, conforming to MIL-P-21035B and SSPC Paint 29, Type II, Level I, for repair of hot-dip galvanizing and meeting the requirements for Zinc-Rich Paints.
  - 1. VOC limit: not more than 250 g/L.
  - 2. Specified manufacturer and product: ZRC Worldwide, Marshfield MA, product "ZRC-221".
- E. Heat Resistant Paint (Ex: Emergency Generator Stack):
  - 1. Thurmalox® 240-202 Silicone-Ceramic Coating, as manufactured by Dampney Company, Inc., Everett, MA 02149 (617) 389-2805. Color shall be silver.
  - 2. Courtaulds Coatings, Inc. product "Intertherm 50", color shall be aluminum
  - 3. Tnemec Coatings number 39-1261, color shall be aluminum.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Accessory materials: other materials not specifically indicated but are required to achieve the finishes specified of commercial quality.
- B. Cleaning Materials: Tri-Sodium Phosphate (TSP) substitute. Acceptable products include the following, or approved equal:
  - 1. Savogran, Norwood MA, products "TSP-PF", or "Liquid TSP Substitute".
  - 2. Custom Building Products, Seal Beach, CA., product "Custom T.S.P. Substitute".
  - 3. DAP Inc., Baltimore MD., product "T.S.P. Substitute Heavy Duty Cleaner".

## 2.4 COLORS

- A. Colors shall be as selected by Architect. Different colors may be selected for each room or area, and more than one (1) color may be selected in each room, area, on each elevation or surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that site environmental conditions are appropriate, and substrates are in proper condition to receive Work of this Section.
- B. Verify that shop applied primers are compatible with specified finish coats.
- C. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not begin application of coatings unless moisture content of surfaces is below the following maximum values:
  - 1. Gypsum soffits: 12 percent.
  - 2. Plaster: 12 percent.
  - 3. Masonry surfaces: 12 percent.
  - 4. Wood surfaces: 15 percent.
  - 5. Vertical concrete surfaces: 12 percent.
  - 6. Horizontal concrete surfaces: 8 percent.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Furnish and lay suitable drop cloths in all areas where coating work is being done to protect floors and all other surfaces from damage during the work. Protect adjoining surfaces with painter's mask tape.
- B. Prior to preparing surfaces or finishing, remove all finish hardware for painting doors and frames, except hinges and locks on exterior door; remove electrical plates, light fixture trim and fittings. Re-install hardware and other removed items after painted surfaces are thoroughly dry.
- C. Mix coatings thoroughly, unless otherwise directed by the manufacturer of the specific coating used, to ensure uniformity of color and mass. Strain previously opened coatings to remove skins, lumps, and other foreign matter prior to painting.
- D. Thin or reduce materials only as recommended by the specific material manufacturer, and only with the approval of the Architect.
- E. Impervious surfaces: Remove mildew by scrubbing with solution of tri-sodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to thoroughly dry.
- F. Concrete and unit masonry surfaces scheduled to receive paint finish:
  - 1. Remove all loose scale and mortar, dirt, salt or alkali powder and other surface contaminates, using a detergent expressly formulated for cleaning of concrete and masonry.
  - 2. Remove oil and grease with a solution of tri-sodium phosphate.
  - 3. Remove stains caused by weathering corroding metals with a solution of sodium metasilicate after thoroughly wetting with water.

4. Thoroughly rinse the cleaned surfaces with clear water, and allow the surfaces to completely dry, allow a minimum of 4 hours before commencing application of coatings.
- G. Uncoated steel and iron surfaces:
1. Remove grease, scale, dirt, rust, and all foreign materials, down to bright metal by wire brushing, scraping, sanding, or sandblasting where heavy coatings of scale are evident.
  2. Wash steel with solvent, apply a treatment of phosphoric acid solution, ensuring weld joints, bolts and nuts are similarly cleaned.
  3. Spot prime after repairs with metal primer product of the finish coating manufacturer.
- H. Shop primed steel surfaces:
1. Remove rust, blistered and defective shop prime paint, and all foreign materials, down to bright metal by wire brushing, scraping, sanding, or commercial paint remover. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous.
  2. Remove all grease or dirt with mineral spirits.
  3. Spot prime bare metal with metal primer product of the finish coating manufacturer. Seal top and bottom edges of metals doors with primer.
- I. Previously painted steel surfaces:
1. Remove rust, blistered and defective paint, down to bright metal by wire brushing, scraping, or sanding. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous as possible.
  2. Remove grease, dirt and all foreign materials.
  3. Spot prime bare metal with metal primer product of the finish coating manufacturer.
- J. Previously painted surfaces to receive wall covering:
1. Sand with 320 grit waterproof paper until surfaces are uniformly abraded.
- K. New galvanized surfaces: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent.
1. Apply coat of etching primer.
- L. Aluminum surfaces scheduled for paint finish:
1. Remove surface contamination by steam or high-pressure water.
  2. Remove oxidation with acid etch and solvent washing.
  3. Apply etching primer immediately following cleaning.
- M. New interior wood items scheduled to receive paint finish.
1. Smooth minor defects and remove all foreign matter by sanding, and if necessary, steel wool.
  2. Wash sap spots and knots with mineral spirits. When dry, touch up knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with commercial stain sealer.
  3. Fill up nail holes and cracks with wood putty or plastic wood after primer of first coat of finish is dry, and sand smooth.

- N. Gypsum board surfaces: Fill minor defects with latex-based spackle. Spot-seal all compound surfaces and repair areas in gypsum board, with specified first coat material before application of the first coat.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply all materials in strict accordance with the approved manufacturer's printed instruction, and in accordance with the best trade practices. Each coat shall be reviewed and approved by the Architect before succeeding coats are applied.
- B. Do not apply successive coating until the preceding coat is thoroughly dry, and in no case in less than 24 hours after the preceding coat.
- C. Number of coats is indicated as a minimum number to be applied over scheduled substrates. An additional coat or coats may be required for proper color coverage of substrate as determined by the Architect, at no additional cost to the Owner. Examples of these conditions include, but are not limited to:
  - 1. Dark colored substrates may require an additional primer or intermediate coat to stabilize color, if final applied top-coat color is light.
  - 2. Pre-finished or pre-primed products may require an additional field applied coat to stabilize the shop/factory applied base color prior to application of top-coat finishes.
  - 3. Dark color topcoat finishes may require additional finish coat over white or light-colored substrates to obtain correct color density.
- D. Apply each coat to a uniform finish; Apply primer and first coat of slightly lighter in color tint than the scheduled color of the final coat.
- E. Leveling: Apply with proper consistency and quality so paint flows out to a level surface free of brush and roller marks, bubbles, dust, runs, sags, and holidays. Spread evenly.
- F. Appearance: Uniform color, texture and sheen.
- G. Neatness: Paint shall not be smeared, spattered or run over adjoining colors or materials. Cut-on lines shall be straight.
- H. Sand lightly between coats to achieve required finish and remove sanding dust prior to applying succeeding coat.
- I. Where clear finishes are required, tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.
- J. Prime back surfaces of all interior and exterior woodwork scheduled for painted finish with primer.
- K. Prime back surfaces of interior woodwork scheduled to receive stain or varnish finish with gloss varnish reduced 25 percent with mineral spirits.

- L. Paint Thickness: Provide the following minimum dry film thickness per coat unless noted otherwise:
1. Enamels on Metal: 1 mil
  2. Latex Paints: 1 mil
  3. Metal Primers: 1.5 mils
  4. Undercoats: 1.5 mils
  5. Oil Paints: 1.5 mils
  6. Epoxy Coating: 2.0 mils
- M. Thickness test: Use observation gauge that measures wet film thickness.

### 3.4 APPLICATION – CONCRETE MASONRY

- A. Apply epoxy block filler to concrete masonry partitions at maximum rate allowed by coating manufacturer. Apply by airless spray followed by back rolling to force material into voids. Use a squeegee to remove excess material prior to initial set and provide a smooth surface texture. After initial set, touch-up and fill apparent voids and holidays with fresh material.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Upon completion of the work in each area, remove all coating splatters from glass, prefinished surfaces, bright metals, and from other surfaces that have not been painted or finished hereunder. Do not use abrasive paper or abrasive cleaner on any prefinished surface or bright metal. Remove all materials and debris; leave work area in a clean condition.

### 3.6 PROTECTION AND TOUCH-UP

- A. During painting work, protect the work of other trades against undue soilage and damage by the exercise of reasonable care and precautions. Properly clean, repair or replace any work so damaged and soiled.
- B. Protect all painted and finished surfaces against damage until the date of final acceptance of the work. The Architect will conduct a final review of all work performed hereunder. Re-coat or touch-up, all scratches and other blemishes on surfaces, and as directed by the Architect, any areas found which do not comply with the requirements of this Section, and bear all costs, therefore.
- C. Any re-coating or touch-up work, required after the work of this Section has been reviewed and accepted by the Architect, will be paid for by the Contractor.

### 3.7 PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Colors: The Architect will furnish a schedule of colors for each area and surface. Tinting and matching shall be to the satisfaction of the Architect. No limit is placed on the number of colors that may be required, or the number of colors in any one room, area, or surface.

Premium paints of deep-hued, bright, pigment intensive, accent and primary colors may be required for both interior and exterior surfaces without additional cost to the Owner.

1. Colors of priming coats (and body coats where specified) shall be lighter in tint than those of finish coat.
2. Colorants: Pure, non-fading pigments, mildew-proof, ultra-violet resistant, finely ground in approved medium; and be lime proof, when used in coatings to be applied on masonry, concrete, plaster, and gypsum board surfaces.

- B. The following is a schedule of typical painted items and does not specifically include every item that is to receive paint but should establish type and quality of finish for all items normally included in a complete paint job.

### 3.8 PAINTING SCHEDULE FOR EXTERIOR SURFACES AND MATERIALS:

- A. Galvanized Metal:

1. Acid etch galvanized surfaces that have not weathered at least six (6) months prior to beginning painting operations.
2. One (1) coat Multi-Purpose Tank & Structural Primer.
3. Two (2) coats 2518 Ultra-Hide Oil/Alkyd Gloss Exterior House & Trim Enamel.
4. Field Weld Touch-Up on Galvanized Metal:
5. Two (2) coats Rust Penetrating Metal Primer

- B. Shop-Primed Ferrous Metals:

1. Clean all bare and abraded areas to bright, bare metal and touch up with either:
  - a. Flat Interior/Exterior Waterborne Primer/Finish or Multi-Purpose Tank & Structural Primer.
  - b. One (1) coat Multi-Purpose Tank & Structural Primer.
2. Two (2) coats 2516 Ultra-Hide Oil/Alkyd Semigloss Exterior House & Trim Enamel.

- C. Wood (Painted Finish):

1. One (1) coat 2010 Ultra-Hide Prime coat Latex.
2. Two (2) coats 2210 Ultra-Hide Flat Latex Exterior House Paint.

- D. Concrete Block (Flat, smooth finish CMU):

1. One (1) coat Interior/Exterior Heavy Duty Acrylic Block Filler.
2. Two (2) coats 2220 Ultra-Hide Exterior Acrylic Flat Masonry Finish.

### 3.9 PAINTING FOR INTERIOR SURFACES AND MATERIALS

- A. Gypsum Drywall:



1. Ceilings and locations not scheduled to receive enamel finish.
    - a. One (1) coat Interior Primer Sealer with texture added.
    - b. Two (2) coats Latex Flat Interior Wall Paint.
  2. Walls scheduled to receive enamel paint.
    - a. One (1) coat Interior Primer Sealer with texture added.
    - b. Two (2) coats Latex Eggshell Interior Wall and Trim Enamel.
- B. Wood: (Painted)
1. One (1) coat Alkyd Prime 'N Finish Flat primer.
  2. Two (2) coats Alkyd Semigloss Interior Wall and Trim Enamel.
- C. Wood: (Stained)
1. Two (2) coats Interior Water Based Polyurethane clear gloss finish.
- D. Shop-Primed Ferrous Metals (Use for metal doors and frames and miscellaneous metal items):
1. Shop coat by others.
  2. Touch up bare areas with Multi-purpose Tank & Structural Primer.
  3. One (1) coat Multi-purpose Tank & Structural Primer.
  4. Two (2) coats Alkyd Semigloss Interior Wall and Trim Enamel.
- E. Galvanized Metals (Use for all exposed interior galvanized metal):
1. Clean and acid etch as necessary.
  2. One (1) coat Multi-purpose Tank & Structural Primer.
  3. Two (2) coats Alkyd Semigloss Interior Wall and Trim Enamel.
- F. Alkyd Enamel (Typical: Corridors, Classrooms, Offices, and where shown):
1. One (1) coat Interior/Exterior Heavy Duty Acrylic Block Filler.
  2. Two (2) coats High Performance Waterborne Acrylic Semi-gloss Enamel.
- G. Concrete Flooring:
1. Clear, Polished finish.
    - a. Premium Concrete Sealer
- H. Transparent Finish on Concrete Floors.
1. Premium Semi-Transparent Concrete Stain
    - a. One (1) coat Epoxy Floor Coating
    - b. One (1) Urethane Topcoat with Anti-Slip Additive.

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 10 1423.16 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.
- B. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Room-Identification Signs: Full-size Sample .
  - 2. Variable Component Materials: Full-size Sample of each base material, character (letter, number, and graphic element) in each exposed color and finish not included in Samples above.
  - 3. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
  - 4. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in Project.
- E. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified by Owner.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Variable Component Materials: 12 replaceable text inserts and interchangeable characters (letters, numbers, and graphic elements) of each type.
  - 2. Tools: One set(s) of specialty tools for assembling signs and replacing variable sign components.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: [Manufacturer of products] [An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer].

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

### 2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign system with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
    - b. APCO Graphics, Inc.
    - c. ASE, Inc.
    - d. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
    - e. Advance Corporation.
    - f. Allen Industries.
    - g. Best Sign Systems, Inc.
    - h. Clarke Systems.
    - i. Cosco.
    - j. Diskey Sign Company.
    - k. Foresight Supersign.
    - l. Mohawk Sign Systems.
    - m. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
    - n. Poblocki Sign Company, LLC.
    - o. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
    - p. Signature Signs, Inc.
    - q. Signs & Decal Corp.

- r. Vista System, LLC.
  - s. Vomar Products, Inc.
  - t. inpro Corporation.
2. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Photopolymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated over subsurface graphics to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
    - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of sign.
    - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied vinyl film.
    - c. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
    - a. Edge Condition at Vertical Edges and at Horizontal Edges: Square cut.
    - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Rounded to radius indicated.
  4. Frame: to hold changeable sign panel.
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
    - b. Material Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for sign.
  5. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard method for substrates indicated.
  6. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille. Typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
  1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
  2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless-steel devices unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
    - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened sign unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Sign Mounting Fasteners:

- a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Through Fasteners: Exposed metal fasteners matching sign finish, with type of head indicated, and installed in predrilled holes.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.
- C. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, 0.045 inch thick, with adhesive on both sides.
- D. Hook-and-Loop Tape: Manufacturer's standard two-part tape consisting of hooked part on sign back and looped side on mounting surface.
- E. Magnetic Tape: Manufacturer's standard magnetic tape with adhesive on one side.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
- 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  - 3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  - 4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- C. Subsurface-Etched Graphics: Reverse etch back face of clear face-sheet material. Fill resulting copy with manufacturer's standard enamel. Apply opaque manufacturer's standard background color coating over enamel-filled copy.
- D. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:
- 1. For snap-in changeable inserts beneath removable face sheet, furnish one suction or other device to assist in removing face sheet. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner.
  - 2. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner.



3. For frame to hold changeable sign panel, fabricate frame without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial sign panel. Subsequent changeable sign panels are by Owner.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls according to the accessibility standard.
- C. Mounting Methods:
  1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
    - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

- b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
2. Through Fasteners: Drill holes in substrate using predrilled holes in sign as template. Countersink holes in sign if required. Place sign in position and flush to surface. Install through fasteners and tighten.
3. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
4. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position and push to engage tape adhesive.
5. Hook-and-Loop Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply sign component of two-part tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage; push to engage tape adhesive. Keep tape strips 0.250 inch away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges when sign is initially installed or reinstalled. Apply substrate component of tape to substrate in locations aligning with tape on back of sign; push and rub well to fully engage tape adhesive to substrate.
6. Magnetic Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 10 2113.17 PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Phenolic-core toilet compartments.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Blocking and supports.
  - 2. Section 10 2800 - Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
- C. Samples: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: **25** or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Structural Performance: Where grab bars are mounted on toilet compartments, design panels to comply with the following requirements:

1. Panels are able to withstand a concentrated load on grab bar of at least 250 lbf applied at any direction and at any point, without deformation of panel.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

## 2.2 PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS <Insert drawing designation>

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. ASI Accurate Partitions.
  2. ASI Global Partitions.
  3. American Sanitary Partition Corporation.
  4. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  5. Bradley Corporation.
  6. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Factory fabricated doors, pilasters, and divider panels, Phenolic panels, floor-mounted headrail-braced.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.
- D. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Solid phenolic-core material with melamine facing on both sides fused to substrate during manufacture (not separately laminated), and with eased and polished edges. Provide minimum 3/4-inch-thick doors and pilasters and minimum 1/2-inch-thick panels.
- E. Entrance-Screen Construction: Matching panel construction.
- F. Urinal-Screen Construction: Matching panel construction.
- G. Pilaster Shoes: Formed from stainless steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch nominal thickness and 3 inches high, finished to match hardware.
- H. Pilaster Sleeves (Caps): Formed from stainless steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch nominal thickness and 3 inches high, finished to match hardware.
- I. Urinal-Screen Post: Manufacturer's standard post design of monolithic phenolic-core urinal screen cutout at bottom to form a post; with shoe[ and sleeve (cap)] matching that on the pilaster.
- J. Brackets (Fittings):
  1. Stirrup Type: Ear or U-brackets, stainless steel.
  2. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design, stainless steel.
- K. Phenolic Compartment Finish: One color in each room.
  1. Through-Color Phenolic: Manufacturer's standard solid through-color.

- a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Door Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's operating hardware and accessories. Mount with through bolts.
  1. Hinges: Manufacturer's stainless steel, surface-mounted, paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
  2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel, surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at toilet enclosures designated as accessible.
  3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent inswinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
  4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel, rubber-tipped bumper at outswinging doors.
  5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel pull at outswinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at toilet enclosures designated as accessible.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless Steel Castings: ASTM A743/A743M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.

- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters and walls to suit floor and wall conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at pilasters and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Ceiling-Hung Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at pilasters and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for connection to structural support above finished ceiling. Provide assemblies that support pilasters from structure without transmitting load to finished ceiling. Provide sleeves (caps) at tops of pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- E. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at pilasters and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of pilasters. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- F. Urinal-Screen Posts: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at posts and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of posts. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at posts to conceal anchorage.
- G. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch-wide, inswinging doors for standard toilet enclosures and 36-inch-wide, outswinging doors with a minimum 32-inch-wide, clear opening for toilet enclosures designated as accessible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels or Screens: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels or Screens and Walls: 1 inch.
  - 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels or screens to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than two brackets attached] [three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
    - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise

indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.

- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 2 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Level, plumb, and tighten pilasters. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are level with tops of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware in accordance with hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

**END OF SECTION**



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 10 2800 TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Toilet room accessories.
  - 2. Shower room accessories.
  - 3. Custodial Accessories
  - 4. Underlavatory guards.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Toilet Room accessories.
  - 2. Shower room accessories.
  - 3. Underlavatory guards.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Include electrical characteristics.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each finish specified, full size.
  - 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- D. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.

2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
  2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Toilet-Compartment Occupancy-Indicator Systems: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace toilet-compartment occupancy-indicator systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. Bobrick.
  2. A & J Washroom Accessories Inc: [www.ajwashroom.com](http://www.ajwashroom.com).
  3. American Specialties, Inc: [www.americanspecialties.com](http://www.americanspecialties.com).
  4. Bradley Corporation: [www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).
- B. All items of each type to be made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Grab Bars
  1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Accessories - General: Shop assembled, free of dents and scratches and packaged complete with anchors and fittings, steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
  - 1. Grind welded joints smooth.
  - 2. Fabricate units made of metal sheet of seamless sheets, with flat surfaces.
- B. Keys: Provide 2 keys for each accessory to Owner.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269, Type 304 or 316.
- E. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 coating.
- F. Mirror Glass: Float glass, ASTM C 1036 Type I, Class 1, Quality Q2, with silvering, copper coating, and suitable protective organic coating to copper backing in accordance with GSA CIDA-A-3002.
- G. Fasteners, Screws, and Bolts: Hot dip galvanized, tamper-proof, security type.

## 2.3 FINISHES

- A. Stainless Steel: No. 4 satin brushed finish, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Back paint components where contact is made with building finishes to prevent electrolysis.

## 2.4 TOILET ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Toilet Paper Dispenser: Surface mounted, double roll type, chrome-plated zinc alloy brackets.
  - 1. Product: # B4288 manufactured by Bobrick.
- B. Seat Cover Dispenser: Surface mounted, chrome-plated.
  - 1. Product: # B221 manufactured by Bobrick.
- C. Wall Mounted Sanitary napkin dispenser.
  - 1. Product: Manufactured by Bobrick
- D. Paper Towel Dispenser: Folded paper type, stainless steel, with viewing slots on sides as refill indicator and tumbler lock.
  - 1. Product: # B4262 manufactured by Bobrick.

- E. Soap Dispenser: wall-mounted, surface, stainless steel cover, stainless steel receptacle
  - 1. Product: B2111 manufactured by Bobrick.
- F. Mirrors: Stainless steel framed, ADA lavatory fixed mirror. 6 mm thick float glass mirror.
  - 1. Size: 18 x 36",
  - 2. Frame: 0.05 inch angle shapes, with mitered and welded and ground corners, and tamperproof hanging system; No.4 finish.
  - 3. Backing: Full-mirror sized, minimum 0.03 inch galvanized steel sheet and nonabsorptive filler material.
- G. Grab Bars: Stainless steel, 1-1/2 inches outside diameter, minimum 0.05 inch wall thickness, non-slip grasping surface finish, concealed flange mounting; 1-1/2 inches clearance between wall and inside of grab bar.
  - 1. Length and configuration: As indicated on drawings at rest rooms.

## 2.5 SHOWER ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use shower room accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Shower Curtain Rod:
  - 1. Description: 1-inchOD, straight rod.
  - 2. Configuration: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Mounting Flanges: Exposed fasteners; in material and finish matching rod.
  - 4. Rod Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin)
- C. Shower Curtain:
  - 1. Size: Minimum 12 inches wider than opening by 72 inches high.
- D. Material: Nylon-reinforced vinyl,
- E. Folding Shower Seat:
  - 1. Configuration: L-shaped seat, designed for wheelchair access
  - 2. Seat: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin); 0.05-inch-minimum nominal thickness; with single-piece, pan-type construction and edge seams welded and ground smooth.
  - 3. Mounting Mechanism: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

## 2.6 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Custodial Mop and Broom Holder with Utility Shelf:
  - 1. Manufacturer: # B239 - Bobrick

2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
3. Length: 32 inches.
4. Hooks: Four.
5. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
  - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
  - b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch-diameter stainless steel.

## 2.7 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

### A. Underlavatory Guard :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Buckaroos, Inc.
  - b. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
  - c. Truebro; IPS Corporation.
2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch-minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch-minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

## 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
  - 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 10 4413 FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
    - a. Portable fire extinguisher.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 4416 - Fire Extinguishers for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed, semi recessed, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
  - 2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples 6 by 6 inches square.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.



- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher. Match existing, cabinets in facility.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    - c. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
    - d. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Nystrom, Inc.
    - f. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
    - g. Strike First Corporation of America.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated One-hour fire rated Two-hour fire rated.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.043-inch-thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch-thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
  - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Recessed Cabinet:
  - 1. Trimless with Hidden Flange: Flange of same metal and finish as box overlaps surrounding wall finish and is concealed from view by an overlapping door.

2. Exposed Flat Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
- E. Semi recessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
- F. Cabinet Trim Material: Same material and finish as door.
- G. Door Material: Steel sheet.
- H. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.
- I. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
1. Provide manufacturer's standard.
  2. Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- K. Accessories:
1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
    - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
      - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing.
      - 2) Application Process: Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters.
      - 3) Lettering Color: Red.
      - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
- L. Materials:
1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
    - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
    - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
  3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  5. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
  1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
  2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
  3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semi recessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semi recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinet Mounting Height: 42 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semi recessed fire-protection cabinets.
  - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
  - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification:
  - 1. Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 10 4416 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 10 4413 - Fire Protection Cabinets.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each mounting bracket indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ansul; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
    - b. Babcock-Davis.
    - c. Badger Fire Protection; a Carrier company.
    - d. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
    - e. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    - f. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
    - g. Kidde; Carrier Global Corporation.
    - h. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - i. Nystrom, Inc.
    - j. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
    - k. Pyro-Chem; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.

4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
  5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type UL-rated 2-A:10-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in manufacturer's standard enameled container.
- C. Purple-K Dry-Chemical Type in Aluminum Container: UL-rated 30-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with potassium bicarbonate-based dry chemical in enameled-aluminum container.

## 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
1. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Mounting Brackets: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

**END OF SECTION**



THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 12 3616 SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid surface material countertops.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 – Rough Carpentry for marine plywood sub base.
  - 2. See Plumbing drawings and Specifications for Fixtures for non-integral sinks and plumbing fittings.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
  - 1. Show locations and details of joints.
  - 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.
  - 2. One full-size solid surface material countertop, with front edge and backsplash, 8 by 10 inches of construction and in configuration specified.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ISFA 2-01.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Affinity Surfaces; a brand of Domain Industries, Inc.
    - b. Avonite Surfaces; a Brand of Aristech Surfaces LLC.
    - c. Meganite Inc.
    - d. Swan Surfaces LLC (Swanstone).
    - e. Transolid.
    - f. Wilsonart LLC.
  - 2. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
  - 3. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  - 1. Grade: Custom.
- B. Configuration:
  - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top, 1-1/2-inch laminated.
- C. Countertops:
  - 1. 3/4-inch-thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- E. Joints:
  - 1. Fabricate countertops without joints.
- F. Cutouts and Holes:
  - 1. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- B. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints where indicated]. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
  - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- C. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- D. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants.
- E. Install steel support brackets to limit counter spans greater than 30-inches. Secure supports to concealed blocking.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 12 3661.19 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 4116 - Plastic Laminate Faced Architectural Cabinets

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
  - 1. Show locations and details of joints.
  - 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.
  - 2. Wood trim, 8 inches long.
  - 3. One full-size quartz agglomerate countertop, with front edge and backsplash, 8 by 10 inches, of construction and in configuration specified.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For quartz agglomerate countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of filled plastic resin and complying with ICPA SS-1, except for composition.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Gramar, LG Viatera
    - b. Cambria.
    - c. Cosentino North America; C&C North America, Inc.
    - d. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
    - e. Wilsonart LLC.

2. Colors and Patterns: LG Viatera – Sonporo. To match architects sample.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

## 2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions and the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  1. Grade: Custom.
- B. Configuration:
  1. See Architectural plans and details.
- C. Joints: Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
  1. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.
  2. Joint Type: Bonded, 1/32 inch or less in width.
  3. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit. Provide at least three splines in each joint.
- D. Cutouts and Holes:
  1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
    - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
  2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by quartz agglomerate manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive quartz agglomerate countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into corner blocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
  - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned, and joints are of specified width.
- F. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 13 3123 TENSIONED FABRIC STRUCTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Section includes a tensioned fabric canopy system as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used.
2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
4. Typical installation methods.

- B. Verification Samples: Two representative units of each type, size, pattern and color.

- C. Shop Drawings: Include details of materials, construction and finish. Include relationship with adjacent construction.

- D. Delegated Design Submittals: For {Insert product or assembly}, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with a minimum five years documented experience.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum two years documented experience with projects of similar scope and complexity.

- C. Source Limitations: Provide each type of product from a single manufacturing source to ensure uniformity.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
- B. Protect from damage due to weather, excessive temperature, and construction operations.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard limited warranty unless indicated otherwise.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: POLYFAB USA [www.polyfabUSA.com](http://www.polyfabUSA.com)
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.2 ARCHITECTURAL FABRICS

- A. Product: Architectural Fabric No. 3820 as manufactured by Polyfab.
  - 1. Match Architects sample:

### 2.3 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain all products and components from single source.

### 2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design Tensioned Fabric shade structure.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly constructed and prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, approved submittals, and in proper relationship with adjacent construction.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Inspection: Coordinate field inspection in accordance with appropriate sections in Division 01.
- B. Manufacturer's Services: Coordinate manufacturer's services in accordance with appropriate sections in Division 01.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean products in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 32 1400 UNIT PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Concrete pavers for outdoor seating area.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For materials other than water and aggregates.
- B. Samples: For each type of unit paver indicated and the following:
  - 1. Joint materials involving color selection.
  - 2. Exposed edge restraints involving color selection.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For unit pavers. Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements, including compliance with standards. Provide for each type and size of unit.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified unit paving installer.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PAVERS

- A. Pavers, matching size style, color, thickness and composition of architect's sample.

- B. Setting Bed and installation method. Pavers shall be placed on prepared, compacted gravel and sand bed

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Mix pavers from several pallets or cubes, as they are placed, to produce uniform blend of colors and textures.
- B. Cut unit pavers with motor-driven masonry saw equipment to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units to provide pattern indicated and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible. Hammer cutting is not acceptable.
- C. Joint Pattern: Match and continue existing unit paver joint pattern.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 32 1823 SYNTHETIC GRASS SURFACING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Synthetic Turf Surfacing: Product collections.
  - 1. Sport / Agility.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS:

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete. For concrete substrate.
- B. Aggregate Base Courses. Subbase for resilient surfacing.
- C. Division 33 Section "Subdrainage" for piping and drainage course serving as subbase for synthetic turf surfacing.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES:

- A. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM D1335 - Test Method for Tuft Bind of Pile Yarn Floor Coverings.
  - 2. ASTM D1577 - Standard Test Methods for Linear Density of Textile Fibers.
  - 3. ASTM D2256 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Yards by the Single-Strand Method.
  - 4. ASTM D2859 - Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials.
  - 5. ASTM D5034 - Standard Test Method for Breaking Strength and Elongation of Textile Fabrics.
  - 6. ASTM D5793 - Standard Test Method for Binding Sites per Unit Length or Width of Pile Yard Floor Coverings.
  - 7. ASTM D5823 - Standard Test Method for Tuft Height of Pile Floor Coverings.
  - 8. ASTM D5848 - Standard Test Method for Mass Per Unit Area of Pile Yarn Floor Coverings.
  - 9. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 10. ASTM E108 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings.
  - 11. ASTM E648 - Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source.
  - 12. ASTM F1015 - Standard Test Method for Relative Abrasiveness of Synthetic Turf Playing Surfaces.
  - 13. ASTM F1292 - Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment.



14. ASTM F1951 - Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  1. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used.
  2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  4. Typical installation methods.
- B. Verification Samples: Two representative units of each type, size, pattern, and color of synthetic turf surfacing indicated.
- C. Shop Drawings: Installation details including roll and seaming layout, methods of attachment and details at penetrations and terminations.
  1. Show layout of marking plan if any, indicating details for specified activity areas.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Installation Schedule: Showing planned commencement and completion dates for each portion of the Work; include critical dates indicated on Owner's project schedule.
- F. Warranty: Sample warranty specified in this Section.
- G. Maintenance Materials:
- H. Extra materials that match products installed and packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Seaming Materials: Sufficient quantity for 100 sq. ft.
  2. Synthetic Turf Fiber: Sufficient quantity for 100 sq. ft.
  3. Infill Material: Sufficient quantity for 100 sq. ft., in weatherproof bags.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing synthetic turf surfacing materials like those specified for this project, with a record of successful service for a minimum of 5 years.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced Installer certified by the manufacturer, employing workers trained and approved by the manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain synthetic turf surfacing materials through one source from a single manufacturer.

1. Provide secondary materials including adhesives, paint, thread, and repair materials of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of synthetic turf surfacing materials.
- D. Mock-Up: Construct a mock-up with actual materials in sufficient time for Architect's review and to not delay construction progress. Locate mock-up as acceptable to Architect and provide temporary foundations and support.
1. The intent of the mock-up is to demonstrate quality of workmanship and visual appearance.
  2. If mock-up is not acceptable, rebuild mock-up until satisfactory results are achieved.
  3. Retain mock-up during construction as a standard for comparison with completed work.
  4. Do not alter or remove mock-up until work is completed or removal is authorized.

## 1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

- A. Conduct conference at Project site following award of contract. Review methods and procedures related to synthetic turf surfacing installation including, but not limited to, construction schedule, availability of materials, equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays, installation procedures, inspection procedures, and coordination with other work.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
- B. Protect from damage due to weather, excessive temperature, and construction operations.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard warranty unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. FieldTurf-North America
- B. Synlawn, which is located at: 2680 Abutment Rd. S. E.; Dalton, GA 30721; Toll Free Tel: 866-796-5296; Email: [request info \(sales@synlawn.com\)](mailto:sales@synlawn.com)
- C. Request for Substitutions: Section 01 6000 – Substitution Procedures.

### 2.2 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

### 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings from an applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for recreation surfaces.
  - 1. Provide synthetic turf system meeting requirements of ASTM F1951.

### 2.4 SYNTHETIC TURF SURFACING - ROOF, DECK, PATIO

- A. Basis of Design Product: SYNlawn RoofDeck Platinum.
  - 1. Test Data: USDA SYSTEM, ASTM E108 CLASS A, ASTM D2859, E84, E648, F1292, F1951, IPEMA, PFA-FREE.
  - 2. Features: EnviroLoc+, HeatBlock, UV Stabilizers.
  - 3. Grass Zone Yarn: Nylon. Yarn Shape: Diamond Mono.
  - 4. Color: Field Green.
  - 5. Fabric Construction: Tufted.
  - 6. Grass Zone Denier: 8400 / 16.
  - 7. Thatch Zone Yarn: Nylon.
  - 8. Color: Field Green.
  - 9. Thatch Zone Denier: 4200 / 8.
  - 10. Pile Height (Nominal)per ASTM D5823: 1-1/8 inch.
  - 11. Face Weight per ASTM D5848: 60 oz/yd<sup>2</sup>.
  - 12. Total Fabric Weight per ASTM D5848: 88 oz/yd<sup>2</sup>.
  - 13. Backing: 13PP/18PET 2pt / 22oz. EnviroLoc+.

14. Primary Backing Weight per ASTM D5848: 6 oz/yd<sup>2</sup>.
15. Secondary Coating Weight: 22 oz per sq yd.
16. Tuft Bind per ASTM D1335: Greater than 8 lbs.
17. Grab Tear Strength (Average) per ASTM D5034: Greater than 200 lbs.
18. Total Yarn Linear Density per ASTM D1577: 12600 Denier.
19. Elongation to Break per ASTM D2256: Greater than 30 percent.
20. Yarn Breaking Strength per ASTM D5793: Greater than 20 lbs.
21. Tuft Machine Gauge per ASTM D5793: 3/8 inches.
22. Flammability per ASTM D2859: Passed.
23. Water Permeability per ASTM D1551: Greater than 500 in/hr.
24. Fabric Width 15 ft.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Infill Material: Synthetic antimicrobial treated silica sand infill in manufacturer's recommended formula for application to synthetic turf surfacing.
- B. Glue, Seaming Fabric, and Thread: As recommended by manufacturer for application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine synthetic turf surfacing base and perimeter conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify substrate meets profile required.
  2. Confirm base material, compaction of substrate, permeability, and drainage system installation meets requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, approved submittals, and in proper relationship with adjacent construction.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect completed installation from damage. Prevent traffic over system prior to acceptance by Owner.
- B. Remove and replace products or materials that are damaged.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Clean products in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 32 3119 DECORATIVE METAL FENCES AND GATES

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum Screen Fence Panel System

#### 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 5000 – Metal Fabrications.

#### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate plan layout, spacing of components, post foundation dimensions, hardware anchorage, gates, and schedule of components.
- A. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty.

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Experienced with type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified and approved by fence manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each color, grade, component and variety of fences and gates from one source.

## 1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify local utility making services before beginning work.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated in the general provisions of the contract, notify the Architect no less than two (2) days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 3. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for fences and gates shown on drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

## 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials in a manner to ensure proper ventilation and drainage. Protect against damage, weather, vandalism and theft.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Finish: 10 years.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

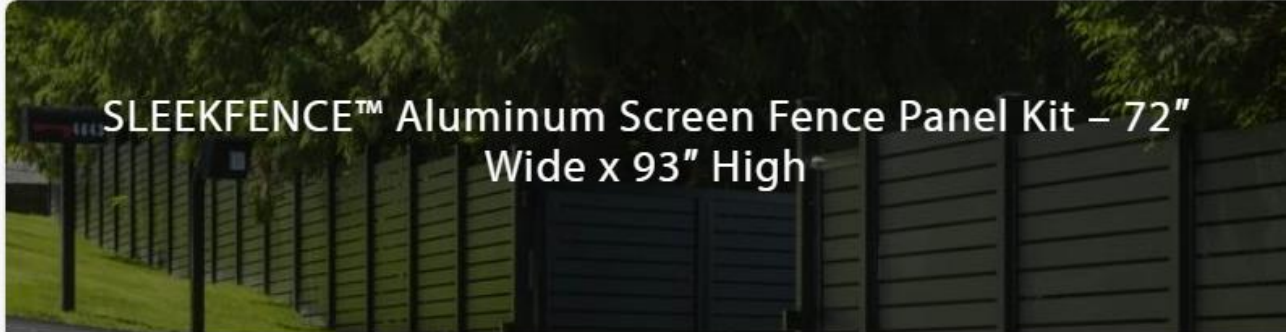
### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: SLEEKFENCE Screen Fence system Tel: 855-875-0855: SLEEKFENCE.com.
  - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

### 2.02 COMPONENTS:

- A. Satin Black Finish:
  - 1. Screen Fence Panels (SKU-1012 x2)
  - 2. 93" Mounting Channel Set (SKU-1037 x1)
  - 3. 5/8" x 4" Horizontal Slats

4. 11/16" gap between slats, and between top and bottom panels.
5. Mounting channels
6. Black SS Screws



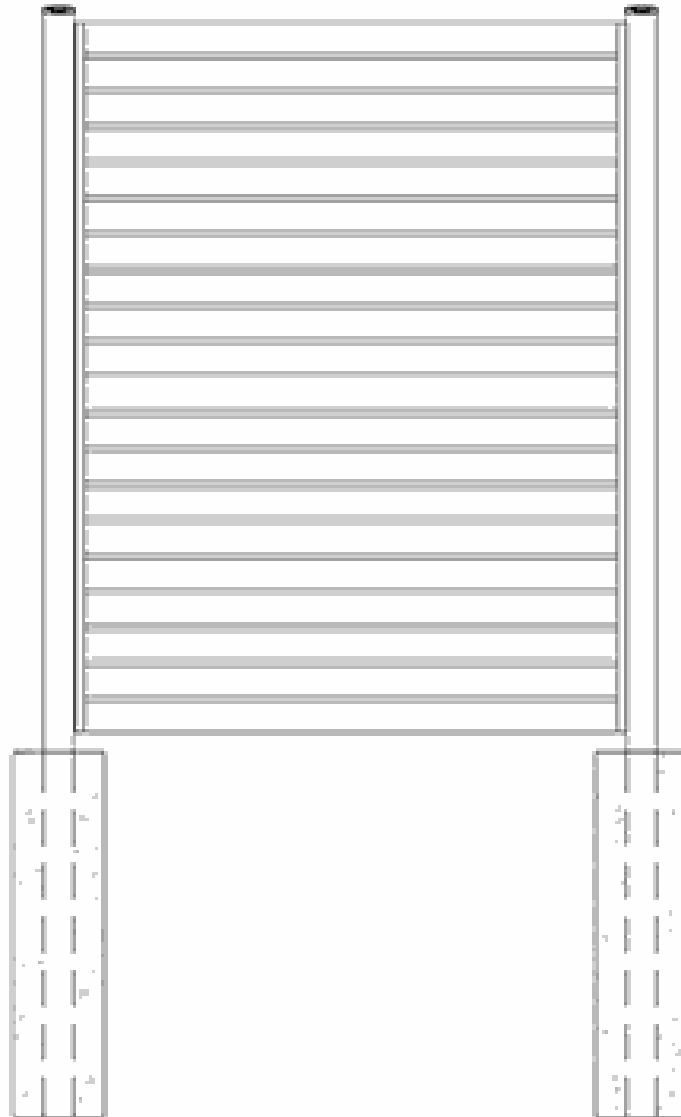
Our SLEEKFENCE™ Screen Fence is a modern fence design which provides privacy yet still lets the light through. Constructed with 5/8" x 4" horizontal slats with a gap size of 3/4" these fence panels are the height of modern & contemporary style.

These modern horizontal fence panels can be used in conjunction with our posts with post caps or can be installed between existing pillars or attached directly to your exterior wall.

Extra sunlight flows through the gaps between horizontal slats on this fence design, which keeps plants and lawns healthy and brightens dark spaces.

This makes the SLEEKFENCE™ horizontal screen fence panel the perfect choice for gardeners and designers.





## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for a verified survey of property lines and legal boundaries, site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance.

- B. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed, unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02      INSTALLATION**

- A. Install the fence along the specified layout according to the drawings.
- B. Posts shall be adequately supported within the concrete forms to maintain the required positioning and prescribed level until concrete has set. All necessary anchors and posts shall be at a minimum depth of 36 in into the ground.
- C. Post Installation: Once the concrete is set, the panels are fastened to the posts with the desired hardware or bracket type.

### **3.04      ERECTION TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset from Indicated Position: 1 inch.

### **3.05      CLEANING**

- A. Clean jobsite of excess materials; scatter excess material from post hole excavations uniformly away from posts. Remove excess material if required.
- B. Touch up scratched surfaces using materials recommended by manufacturer. Match touchup paint color to fence finish.

### **3.06      PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 32 3119 DECORATIVE METAL FENCES AND GATES

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum Screen Fence Panel System

#### 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 5000 – Metal Fabrications.

#### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate plan layout, spacing of components, post foundation dimensions, hardware anchorage, gates, and schedule of components.
- A. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty.

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Experienced with type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified and approved by fence manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each color, grade, component and variety of fences and gates from one source.

## 1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify local utility making services before beginning work.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated in the general provisions of the contract, notify the Architect no less than two (2) days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 3. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for fences and gates shown on drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

## 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials in a manner to ensure proper ventilation and drainage. Protect against damage, weather, vandalism and theft.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Finish: 10 years.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: SLEEKFENCE Screen Fence system Tel: 855-875-0855: SLEEKFENCE.com.
  - 1. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures.

### 2.02 COMPONENTS:

- A. Satin Black Finish:
  - 1. Screen Fence Panels (SKU-1012 x2)
  - 2. 93" Mounting Channel Set (SKU-1037 x1)
  - 3. 5/8" x 4" Horizontal Slats

4. 11/16" gap between slats, and between top and bottom panels.
5. Mounting channels
6. Black SS Screws

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for a verified survey of property lines and legal boundaries, site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed, unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install the fence along the specified layout according to the drawings.
- B. Posts shall be adequately supported within the concrete forms to maintain the required positioning and prescribed level until concrete has set. All necessary anchors and posts shall be at a minimum depth of 36 in into the ground.
- C. Post Installation: Once the concrete is set, the panels are fastened to the posts with the desired hardware or bracket type.

### **3.04 ERECTION TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset from Indicated Position: 1 inch.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Clean jobsite of excess materials; scatter excess material from post hole excavations uniformly away from posts. Remove excess material if required.
- B. Touch up scratched surfaces using materials recommended by manufacturer. Match touchup paint color to fence finish.

### **3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**